

PROGRAMME OF STUDIES
FOR
THE INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL
(GRADES VII, VIII, AND IX)

CURRICULUM

LB
1629.5
A3
A35
1937
gr.07-09

ALTA
373.19
1937
Gr. 7-9

CURRGDHT

CURR HIST

Ex LIBRIS
UNIVERSITATIS
ALBERTAENSIS



Universal Bindery Ltd.

9850 - 60 Avenue
Edmonton, Alberta



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2012 with funding from
University of Alberta Libraries

PROGRAMME OF STUDIES

FOR

THE INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL
(Grades VII, VIII, and IX)

AND

DEPARTMENTAL REGULATIONS
RELATING TO
THE GRADE IX EXAMINATION



AUTHORIZED BY THE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

UNIVERSITY
OF ALBERTA LIBRARY

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Introduction	5
The Intermediate School—	
General Aims	6
Distinctive Features	7
Scheme of Subjects and Time Allotment	9
General Directions	11
Tests and Examinations	12
Regulations governing the Grade VIII Promotion Tests	13
Regulations governing the Grade IX Examination	14
Promotion from Grade IX	16
English	17
Social Studies	28
Health and Physical Education	62
Mathematics	88
General Science	91
Art	140
Dramatics	156
Music	167
Farm and Home Accounting	196
Elementary Bookkeeping and Junior Business	197
Typewriting	204
Oral French	204
General Shop	206
Home Economics	224

The Programme of Studies for the Intermediate School

Introduction.—Education for Democracy.

Many pupils complete their education as citizens in the Intermediate School, and all complete there the period of compulsory school attendance. There is a special connection, therefore, between the Programme of the Intermediate School and the subsistence of democracy.

Education for the individual is a process of controlled development within a social matrix. All human beings learn by experience, but experience that is truly educative must be guided and controlled. The main advantage of education is economy of time and effort in learning.

Writers on education make a practice of setting forth many aims of education. In reality, there are as many aims of education in any given society as there are patterns of behaviour in that society. Every culture pattern is a legitimate aim of education in some society. Some aims, however, are more important than others at a given stage of the learner's development. Some aims, moreover, are so important at all stages that they cannot safely be left to haphazard or unduly time-consuming modes of learning. Schools were established in the first instance to facilitate the learning of things which must be learned anyway sooner or later, but which can be learned more economically and expeditiously through the specialized procedures of formal instruction than in any other way. In pioneer days it was the main function of schools to inculcate the three R's, because this was the only educative function that could not be performed equally well by other social institutions such as the home and the church. Through the change from a simple agrarian to a complex industrialized economy, the pattern of society and social relationships has become exceedingly intricate, with the result that the schools are now called upon to do many other things than merely to train for literacy. The schools of today have been compelled through economic and social developments to take over, in a large measure, the educative functions of other social institutions. Schools now provide a social environment for the learner in which he must react to social situations. The learner develops his capacities as an individual. He also acquires, through the attitudes and relationships induced by social behaviour, a personality that reaches out and enfolds society. The learner is part of society, and society becomes part of the learner.

The dominant purpose of education, embracing its collective aims, is now as ever the transmission of social culture from one generation to the next. Education secures social stability and solidarity, and at the same time provides for social progress. Culture is the product of two factors: co-operation and intelligence. Education will therefore make use of certain integrating studies, such as language, literature, and the so-called social studies; and also of such studies as mathematics and science, which exemplify the technique of intelligence. In a democratic society,

it is the special and indispensable task of education to dispel ignorance and obscurantism with respect to the economic and social realities, and to arouse the sense of social and civic responsibility. The educational programme of such a society will facilitate social progress by stressing the importance of problem-solving, of thinking that is free from prejudice or emotion, and of open-minded discussion.

In general, one may say that the following educational trends of the present day will be found in the up-to-date school programme:

1. A broad perspective in education, with recognition not only of knowledge, but also of skills, habits, appreciations, attitudes and ideals as valid objectives. Training for literacy is not enough. The traditional view that education is book-learning still prevails, however, in socially backward communities.
2. A reaction against the mechanized routine of formal instruction, with the consequent adoption of project or enterprise procedures, and the substitution of pupil for teacher activity.
3. Recognition in the programme of training for personal and social efficiency, emotional control, and integration of personality.
4. General acceptance of the principle that the purpose of education is fundamentally social, and that an understanding of the social environment is quite as necessary as an understanding of the physical environment.
5. Belief in the ideals of democracy, and in the possibility of maintaining them through education.

The General Aims of the Intermediate School.

The Intermediate School is a school for pupils of the "between ages"—pupils from eleven to fifteen years of age. It offers a distinctive programme of studies and activities specially suited to pupils who have attained the status of early adolescence. Like the elementary school, it represents an attempt to adjust the school programme and environment to the needs of an age group. Like the high school, it offers a programme of liberal-cultural studies, but with the difference that its programme is not primarily concerned with preparation for advanced academic instruction.

It is a difficult matter for most adolescents to make a wise choice from the adult occupations. Some will later go to the farm; some will go into the trades, some into business; some will find clerical or civil service positions; and some will enter the professions. But the intermediate school cannot segregate these groups. It must offer a sound "core" of instruction that is of value to all pupils, and, by way of enriching the programme, make provision for individual interests and aptitudes through elective and more or less exploratory courses. The intermediate school must be a preparatory school for pupils who will proceed to the high school; but at the same time it must serve as a "finishing school" for pupils who, for one reason or another, are unable to advance beyond Grade IX.

Many pupils who have no aptitude for academic training drop out of Grade VII or VIII with a sense of inadequacy and failure, when they could still profit from further education if it were of a kind suited to their needs. It is the proper function of the intermediate school to offer a programme that will appeal to all pupils of the adolescent group; a programme that is complete in itself and valuable in its own right, without regard to preparation for the high school; a programme

that will, in effect, enable pupils who leave school to do so with a sense of accomplishment.

The intermediate school must accept responsibility for completing the education of many young citizens. It should, therefore, inculcate loyalty to the democratic ideal, and exemplify in its programme, procedures and government, the value and efficacy of that ideal. It should continue the programme, begun in the elementary school, of teaching the pupil how to examine both sides of a question, how and where to find facts, and how to use the evidence of authorities in reaching a conclusion. It should preserve and foster the spirit of personal freedom, evoked in the elementary school by the enterprise procedure.

Distinctive Features of the Intermediate School.

Under the most favourable conditions, the Alberta Intermediate School will be a separate unit in a 6-3-3 organization of grades, housed in a separate building containing a special plant. It will offer departmentalized instruction in all of the major fields of study, and throughout the complete range of optional subjects. Its experienced and well-trained staff will consist of specialists whose academic preparation has in all cases reached the level of university graduation. Its classroom projects, assemblies, and social and extra-curricular activities will be segregated from those of either the elementary or the high school.

With conditions as they are, however, it is not to be expected that a shift can be made to the new type of organization in any but urban schools. In Edmonton and in Calgary there are facilities for departmentalized instruction, and for a fairly complete offering of optional subjects. Yet the 9-3 and 6-6 types of organization will not be unusual in the cities and larger towns. In many three-room or four-room schools, the intermediate school will be little more than a group of pupils in Grades VII, VIII and IX in one room under a single teacher. In two-room schools, it may not be possible even to assemble Grades VII, VIII and IX in one group. Not infrequently, Grade IX will be associated with the high school grades.

Nevertheless, the separate and complete intermediate school is the goal towards which we should work. This school will have the following distinctive features: a programme that combines a diversified curriculum with some of the social activities of daily life; teaching procedures and class management appropriate to adolescence; educational and vocational guidance; and a special plant and equipment.

1. The curriculum will consist of a "core," supplemented with elective or optional subjects. The core should include some of the traditional "academic" subjects, but the number of these to be included is still an open question. When all of the major fields of knowledge are represented in the core, two procedures are possible:
 - (a) To organize classes on the "double-track" plan, with provision for both a normal and a rapid rate of progress. This plan is used in the junior high schools of the city of New York.
 - (b) To offer, as is the practice in some other large American schools, "general" or "survey" courses—attenuated or diluted courses for pupils going no farther in school than Grade IX, and enriched courses for those proceeding to high school. On the other hand, many schools have reduced the number of core subjects to three; namely, English, Social Studies, and Health Education. It is conceded, however, that most

adolescent pupils can profit from instruction in the traditional subjects if the material is properly selected for their instructional level, and is organized in short, simple units, presented in a practical setting. In any event, the core should include a sound training in the fundamentals of oral and written English; a more or less comprehensive view of the world of today, through social studies; and the rudiments of science in everyday life, together with the foundation in science for health rules and physical recreation. As an enrichment, there may be added the practical application of useful concepts in mathematics, and some knowledge of the technique of science and the great scientific discoveries.

The elective and optional courses will be of *three* kinds:

- (a) Those designed to develop *cultural appreciation*, and to train for leisure-time hobbies and avocational pursuits. Amongst these will be courses in music, art, craftwork and dramatics, involving participation in clubs, plays, and the school band or orchestra.
- (b) *Exploratory courses*; such as courses in general shop, commercial and industrial art, home economics, typewriting and bookkeeping. These courses will explore the personal resources of the pupils through suitable and adequate activation, intelligent selection, and experimental direction.
- (c) Prevocational courses, similar to those listed in the preceding paragraph, but more intensive and extensive. These courses can be specially adapted to the needs of pupils whose educational limit will be reached at or below the level of Grade IX.

The programme should include, besides the curriculum, a full list of avocational, social, recreational, sports and pupil government activities; such as will develop social co-operation and wholesome social attitudes.

2. The teaching procedures, methods of discipline, and administrative control in the intermediate school must be adapted to the peculiar mental, emotional and physical needs of adolescent pupils. The teachers should be experts in the psychology of adolescence. Teaching procedures should also be adjusted to differences in mentality, special aptitudes, personality and physique. Dull pupils do not profit from sustained instruction. They require short and simple units of work, with an obvious goal always in evidence. Attention should also be given to special aptitudes, and to differences in personality and physique. Sound methods of diagnosis should be employed, leading to appropriate remedial measures, and educational or vocational guidance. Promotion within the intermediate school should be more or less casual, determined less by rigid requirements than by the special needs of the pupils concerned. Promotion tests and examinations should be internal.
3. The special plant and equipment of the intermediate school should include classroom libraries and committee rooms, a general library and reading room, an auditorium and stage for assemblies and dramatics, a gymnasium, properly equipped shops and laboratories, typewriting rooms, and special rooms for art, craftwork, sewing and home economics.

THE SCHEME OF SUBJECTS AND TIME ALLOTMENT

Grades VII and VIII

COMPULSORY SUBJECTS:	Time Allotment (in periods per week)
English	5
Social Studies	5
Health and Physical Education	3-4
Mathematics	5
General Science	3
Music	2
Art (<i>either in Grade VII or Grade VIII</i>)	2
<i>Additional Requirements:</i>	
Library or Remedial English ..	3
Supervised Study	5
Periods per week required	31 (32) or 33 (34)
OPTIONAL SUBJECTS (one or two to be chosen):	
Dramatics	2-4
Farm and Home Accounting	2-3
Typewriting	2-3
General Shop	2-4
Home Economics	2-4
Periods per week available for optional subjects	7 (6) or 9 (8)

DIRECTIONS.

1. The school day comprises eight class periods, of which one must be a study period.
2. Art is required either in Grade VII or Grade VIII. If Art is not offered in Grade VII, the number of periods per week required in Grade VII for compulsory subjects, library or remedial English, and supervised study is 31 or 32, according to the number of periods given to Health and Physical Education. If Art is offered in Grade VII, the corresponding numbers are 33 and 34. A similar statement will apply for Grade VIII.
3. One of the optional subjects listed for Grades VII and VIII may be offered in Grade VII, and two in Grade VIII; but in either case, only with the approval of an inspector of schools, which will depend on the amount of time available for instruction, the equipment, and the qualifications of the teacher or teachers.
4. The number of periods per week available, with the inspector's approval, for optional subjects will be 6, 7, 8 or 9; that is to say, the difference between 40 and the number of required periods, as explained in No. 2 above.
5. Special qualifications are required for teaching Dramatics, General Shop, Home Economics and Typewriting. The special qualifications of Grade VII and Grade VIII teachers are subject to the approval of the Department of Education, or of an inspector of schools.

Grade IX

COMPULSORY SUBJECTS:	Time Allotment (in periods per week)
English	5
Social Studies	5
Health and Physical Education	3
Mathematics	5
General Science	5
<i>Additional Requirement:</i>	
Supervised Study	5
Periods per week required	28

OPTIONAL SUBJECTS (three to be chosen):

Art	2-4
Dramatics	2-4
Music	2-4
Elementary Bookkeeping and Junior Business	2-4
Typewriting	2-4
Oral French	2-4
General Shop	2-4
Home Economics	2-4
Periods per week available for Optional Subjects	12

DIRECTIONS.

1. The Department of Education expects that in one-teacher rural schools instruction will be offered in Grades I to VIII. In these schools the Department will require that any instruction in grades above the eighth have the approval of an inspector of schools.
2. The school day comprises eight class periods, of which one must be a study period.
3. The Grade IX Programme comprises five compulsory subjects and a number of optional subjects of which any three will be sufficient to complete the Grade IX requirements.

In large schools a considerable range of choice will be given to the individual pupils; but in small schools or small classes the qualifications of the teacher, the equipment and facilities of the school, and the amount of time available for instruction will be determining factors.

4. Special qualifications are required for teaching the optional subjects of Grade IX, with the exception of Art.
In all schools, whether of one room or more, the special qualifications of Grade IX teachers are subject to the approval of the Department of Education, or of an inspector of schools. The Department will not grant standing in optional subjects to pupils whose teacher does not hold approved qualifications.
5. Twelve periods a week will be available to each Grade IX pupil for instruction in optional subjects. Not more than four periods a week,

or fewer than two, is to be given to any one optional subject. General Shop or Home Economics will each require half a day per week.

6. The Department of Education will, where conditions warrant, authorize urban school boards to offer shop courses in place of one or more of the Grade IX options.

General Directions Respecting the Programme

1. The Alberta programme is a protest against formal methods of instruction and rigidly prescriptive instructional materials. *The course outlines are suggestive, not prescriptive.* Teachers may find it necessary or expedient to depart from the mode of treatment set forth in a course outline, or to reorganize the content in a different order or in units other than those appearing in the programme.

Several of the course outlines contain more material than the teacher can cover in one year with an average class. Those who attempt to "teach" all of this material *in extenso* without regard to circumstances will find the results disappointing. Better results will come from a judicious selection of material adapted to the abilities of the class.

2. It will be seen that the time schedule provides not only for periods of class instruction, but also for library periods, periods for remedial work, and periods for supervised study. *The schedule is designed to prevent the overloading of the daily programme of instruction.* It allows the pupils a certain amount of free time every day, and gives to individual pupils in need of remedial instruction an opportunity to get it. It also finds a place for pupil activity as well as teacher activity.

3. For Division I and Division II of the Elementary School Programme, the principle has been adopted that grade designations do not serve as a basis for promotion, but merely to denote successive levels of attainment in different subjects of the curriculum. Within a division, pupils are taught as a single group, with due attention, of course, to the need for individual or remedial instruction in certain cases. Within a division, promotion is by subject rather than by grade.

To a large extent the same principle may be applied in the Intermediate School. *Pupils of Grades VII, VIII and IX who occupy the same classroom may, in so far as the more advanced character of the instruction permits, be taught as a single group.* Here promotion by subject will be more advantageous than promotion by grade. Promotion from Grade VII to Grade VIII or from Grade VIII to Grade IX will be a matter of secondary importance; for it will be almost entirely in the hands of the teacher, who may combine classes, or group selected individuals, as good management may require.

The course outlines encourage the combining of grades, as well as the use of flexible standards for promotion. For several of the optional subjects, and for English Literature, Health and Physical Education, and Music, it will be possible to combine Grades VII, VIII and IX. For Art, Social Studies and General Science, Grades VII and VIII may be combined. On the other hand, separate classes, or even individual instruction, will usually be required for oral and written English, and for Mathematics.

The intermediate school programme should therefore be a great boon to teachers and pupils in the ungraded school. Both will enjoy a greater measure of freedom than was possible under the old programme.

4. With more free time on the programme, *pupils should be assigned only a small amount of homework*. Homework, in fact, is inimical to the spirit and genius of the intermediate school. It belongs more properly to the "academic grind" of the high school.

Remedial study, and free reading or other self-imposed tasks, may be completed at home. But lengthy written exercises, or difficult problems in mathematics or science, should not be assigned as homework.

Tests and Examinations

There can be no doubt that faulty techniques of testing and examining are in a large measure responsible for the aridity of school courses and the barrenness of their results. Naturally the type of examination determines the type of teaching procedure. The prevailing type of examination puts a premium on the reproduction of memorized subject-matter. It does not test for the realization of professed objectives. As stated in the Programme of Studies for the Elementary School, the pupil's learning should eventuate in the following desirable outcomes: knowledge, with insight and understanding; habits; skills; interests and appreciations; attitudes; and ideals. It is the business of examiners to test for these outcomes.

The Department of Education conducts no tests or examinations below the level of Grade VIII. Within this range, testing is left to teachers, principals, or superintendents. In the intermediate school there is a place for the teacher's testing programme. Assimilation and mastery tests are important instructional tools, which should be constructed for the diagnosis of pupil weaknesses in order that the appropriate remedial instruction may follow. Testing should not be left until the end of the school term.

Since the majority of students who complete the Grade VIII programme in rural schools will go to other schools for Grade IX instruction, and will therefore find it expedient to have a Grade VIII diploma, the Department of Education will continue to prepare Grade VIII Promotion Tests. *Regulations governing the use of these tests will be found below.*

The Department of Education will conduct annually a Grade IX Examination. This examination together with Grade VIII Promotion Tests will be in charge of the High School Entrance Examination Board. The purposes of the Grade IX Examination are the following:

1. To serve as a general check-up of a pupil's intermediate school achievement.
2. To test a pupil's mastery of language skills, his power to manipulate some of the fundamental concepts of mathematics, and his grasp of general ideas in science and social studies.
3. To furnish data respecting his mental capacity and special aptitudes, to be used for educational guidance.
4. To provide a basis for promotion to the High School.

The following general remarks may be added respecting the *character of the Grade IX Examination*:

1. *To a considerable extent, it will be of the "objective" type. The constituent question papers will be prepared by a committee of test and subject-matter specialists.*
2. *The valuing and grading of the answer papers will be done under direct instructions from the Board. Statistical techniques will be employed, and other precautions will be taken to keep the examination on a scientific basis.*
3. *It will be the endeavour of the Board to make the examination of such a character that it will defeat "cramming," and offer no encouragement to teaching that is aimed directly at examination results. In other words, the examination will require the adjustment of teaching procedures to the objectives of the programme.*

Regulations Governing the Grade VIII Promotion Tests

1. Pupils of the intermediate school who have completed the work of the Grade VIII course in a satisfactory manner may be promoted to Grade IX on the recommendation of the superintendent, principal or teacher in charge. The basis of promotion will be the pupils' classroom work, as indicated by term or final tests.
2. Cards on which is to be recorded the number of pupils completing the Grade VIII course will be mailed to the Secretary of each School District early in each year. These cards should be returned to the Department of Education before April 15th.
3. Since the majority of pupils who successfully complete the Grade VIII course in rural schools will go to other schools for Grade IX instruction, and will therefore find it necessary to present a Grade VIII diploma, the Department of Education will issue this diploma, without charge, to all pupils who have been recommended in the regular manner for promotion to Grade IX.
4. Forms will be supplied for recording the names and achievements of Grade VIII pupils who are recommended for promotion to Grade IX. These forms, when completed, must show the length of time each student has been in attendance, preparing the work of this grade, and the average standing during such attendance.
5. The Department of Education will forward to schools where there are Grade VIII pupils the usual Departmental Promotion Tests. *Teachers in rural schools and in the smaller centres are advised to use these tests, in order that the results obtained may assist them in determining the fitness of students for promotion. When the tests are used, they must be given according to the official time-table. In no case shall the answer papers be forwarded to the Department of Education.*
6. The Departmental Promotion Tests will be five in number, as follows: (1) *English, comprising Literature and (Supplementary) Reading, Language (Composition and Grammar) and Spelling;* (2) *Social Studies;* (3) *Mathematics;* (4) *General Science and Health Education;* and (5) *Music and Art.*
7. The tests will be similar in character to the corresponding parts of the Grade IX Examination.

The test in English will consist of *two* parts: one in *Literature* and one in *Language*.

The former will test the pupil's ability to *comprehend* and *appreciate* what he reads and to *express his appreciation in acceptable form*. It will not necessarily be based on the prescribed reading, but may make use of "sight" selections.

The latter will be a test on *language usage*, and on the *practical application of the more important principles of sentence and paragraph structure*. In general, it will test the pupil's ability to express his ideas clearly, correctly, and in good form.

8. Pupils whose achievement does not fall below 40% on any of the tests, and whose average achievement on all of the tests is 50% or over, will be considered eligible for promotion, and will be granted Grade VIII diplomas by the Department of Education, without charge.

Regulations Governing the Grade IX Examination

1. In June, 1937, and each year thereafter, the Department of Education will conduct a Grade IX Examination, on which all pupils will be required to write who have completed the programme of Grades VII, VIII and IX, and desire promotion to the High School. The pupils' status and achievement will be graded by a High School Entrance Examination Board according to certain standards of quality; and on this basis pupils will be directed to appropriate courses of the high school programme. The fee for the Grade IX Examination is \$3.00.
2. (a) The Grade IX Examination will comprise *four* tests: one in *English*, one in *Mathematics*, one in *Social Studies*, and one in *General Science* and *Health Education*.
(b) The tests in *English* and *Mathematics*, and, if necessary, in either or both of the remaining subjects, will consist of *two* parts, which may or may not be given at one sitting. In each case, however, the parts will be taken together for the purpose of scoring.
(c) One part of the test in *English* will cover *Literature* and *Reading*, and the other will cover *Language* (Oral and Written English, and Spelling). The former will test the candidate's ability to *comprehend* and *appreciate* what he reads, and to *express his appreciation in acceptable form*. It will not necessarily be based on the prescribed reading, but may make use of "sight" selections.
The latter will be a test on *language usage*, and on the *practical application of the more important principles of sentence and paragraph structure*.
(d) The final value assigned to a candidate's answer papers in *Literature* and *Language* will depend not only on their content, but on the quality of the written expression in respect to spelling, clearness, correctness, and good form.

The same treatment will be given to the candidate's answer papers in *Social Studies*, *Mathematics*, *Science* and *Health Education*. On every paper a definite portion of the score will be assigned for spelling, clearness, correctness, and good form.

- (e) One part of the test in *Mathematics* will cover *Algebra*, and the other part, *Geometry*.
3. All answer papers in subjects of the Grade IX Examination must be forwarded to the Department of Education, where they will be read and scored by a committee of sub-examiners, under direct instructions from the High School Entrance Examination Board.
 4. (a) Pupils who complete the programme of the Intermediate School and write on the Grade IX Departmental Examination may be candidates for the Grade IX diploma. In order to obtain the diploma a candidate must pass the Grade IX Examination in English, Social Studies, Mathematics, and General Science and Health Education, and must also, during the year in which the written examination is taken, have obtained a satisfactory standing in three of the optional subjects of the Grade IX programme, on recommendation of the principal or teacher in charge.
 - (b) Candidates will not be permitted to write on part of the Grade IX Examination; nor will they be given credit in separate subjects of the examination. They may, of course, take more than one year to complete the Grade IX programme, but *they must take the written examination as a whole*, and at the time they take the examination, they must have completed the requirements in three optional subjects.
 5. (a) The promotion tests will be provided by the Department in the optional subjects of the Grade IX programme. Standing will be granted in these subjects on recommendation of the superintendent, principal, or teacher in charge.
 Provided, however, that *standing will not be granted in cases where the teacher's qualifications have not been approved by an inspector of schools*. The optional subjects on which the teacher reports must correspond with those approved by the inspector.
 - (b) Because of the fact that many Grade IX pupils will elect optional subjects in which they have had no previous training in the intermediate school, teachers are asked, when assigning grades to the work accomplished by these pupils in the optional subjects, to attach as much importance to the amount of progress made by the pupil during the year as to the standard of accomplishment which he reaches at the end of the year. For example, a pupil beginning with little training in Music may during the year's work have made very great progress, even though at the end of the year he does not reach what would be regarded as a desirable standard of achievement for a Grade IX pupil.
 - (c) *No pupil is eligible for promotion to the high school who has not obtained standing in three optional subjects.*
 6. Teachers of Grade IX classes will receive during the spring term the following printed forms from the Department of Education:
 - (a) A circular of instructions respecting the Grade IX Examination.
 - (b) Forms for the Principal's Confidential Report.
 - (c) Grade IX Record Cards, which will also serve as pupils' applications to write on the Grade IX Examination.

Certain blanks on the Record Card are to be filled in by the teacher. Directions for doing so will be given in the circular of instructions.

The Grade IX Record Card becomes, when completed, an important document conveying within small compass a great deal of information respecting a pupil's school performance.

When the cards have been returned to the Department, the Grade IX examination scores will be entered in the blanks reserved for the use of the Department. The cards will then be canvassed by the High School Entrance Examination Board, and thereafter be kept on file at the Department for later entries of high school records.

7. *Certificates for Standing in Grade IX Music.*—Certificates of the following Examining Boards, issued for the grade specified in each case, will be accepted by the Department of Education as the equivalent of full Grade IX standing in Music.

EXAMINING BOARDS	INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL GRADE IX	
	Practical	Theory
University of Toronto Toronto Conservatory	Grade VI	Grade I
Western Board of Music	Grade V	Grade III
McGill University McGill Conservatorium	Junior Grade	Elementary Grade
Associated Board of Royal Schools	Grade IV	Grammar of Music, Grade II

Promotion from Grade IX to the High School

1. No pupil will be permitted to take instruction in high school subjects until he has completed the intermediate school programme and has been promoted to the high school.
2. No pupil is eligible for promotion to the high school who has not been granted a satisfactory standing in three of the optional subjects of Grade IX.
3. A candidate's standing on the Grade IX Examination will be determined in the main by the average of his scores on the four tests of which the examination consists. A reasonable minimum achievement will be required on each of the tests. It may be further stated that the High School Entrance Examination Board, in recommending for promotion, will consider the candidate's record as a whole, with due regard for (1) his standing in the optional subjects, (2) other data reported on the Record Card, and (3) the Principal's Confidential Report. The Board may make special recommendations when such are required.
4. The following schedule will govern promotions:

Average Achievement
Grade A: 60% or over.

Condition of Promotion
Unconditional promotion. With this standing, pupils are free to take any course or subject of the High School Programme.

Grade B: 45%-60%.

Restricted promotion. Pupils will be required to take *English, Social Studies, and Health and Physical Education*. They may elect other subjects to fill out the first year programme; but they may *not*, however, elect more than *two* of the subjects included in the following groups, nor more than *one* subject from a group: (1) *Algebra or Geometry*; (2) *Physics or Chemistry*; (3) *Latin, French, or German*.

Grade C: 30%-45%.

Conditional promotion. Pupils will be required to take *English, Social Studies, and Health and Physical Education*. They may, in schools where the facilities permit, elect other subjects to fill out the first year programme, but *not any* of the following: *Algebra, Geometry, Physics, Chemistry, Latin, French, or German*.

Grade D: Under 30%.

Failure. Pupils must repeat the Grade IX course.

Pupils whose Grade is B or C may, if they prefer, repeat the Grade IX course.

OUTLINES OF COURSES

ENGLISH

The course in English for the Intermediate School embraces (I) *Literature and Reading* and (II) *Language*; the latter including *Oral and Written Language, Grammar, Spelling and Word-Study*.

NEW FEATURES OF THE PROGRAMME IN ENGLISH

Some of the differences between the new and old programme in English for Grades VII, VIII and IX are basic. An appreciation of these will affect very materially the type of teaching procedures, the classroom activities, the response of the pupils, and the attainment of objectives.

1. Although English is listed in the programme as a "subject" it is more properly *a tool for use in the other subjects*. There is a vital connection between the branches of English and each of the other subjects; for example, between Literature and Dramatics, or Music; between Reading and Social Studies, General Science, or Mathematics; or between Language and Social Studies, Dramatics or Junior Business.
2. *Every teacher will therefore be a teacher of English*. Neither Literature nor Language can now be regarded as compartments that are separate from other parts of the programme. The social ideals embodied in Literature selections will be subject to scrutiny in the Social Studies class. Pupils' reports on outside reading, the concise statements required of them in observations and experiments, and their well-expressed ideas concerning problems under discussion, are practical exercises in Oral and Written Language. In schools where instruction is departmentalized, *the teacher of English can no longer be held solely responsible for checking and criticizing oral and written English*. It will be the duty of the principal to devise a plan for distributing the responsibility.

3. It follows also that the teaching of English must be *unified*. Reading cannot be divorced from Literature; nor Language from Reading. Within Language itself, oral and written expression cannot be kept apart; nor can Grammar or Spelling be isolated from "Composition." Grammar has been a barren subject, largely because it is taught for its own sake, and not as the technique of correct and effective expression.
4. The programme in English stresses *pupil activity* rather than formal instruction. Teachers of the junior grades in the Elementary School find that Oral and Written Language improve very greatly as a result of enterprise work. It is not too much to expect that the activities required in the Social Studies of the Intermediate School will have the same result. Likewise, the course in Dramatics should stimulate improvement in reading ability and oral expression. On the other hand, there will be less time given to the intensive "teaching" of Literature. Pupils will do more reading for themselves.
5. The time allotment for English has been reduced to the level prevailing for the other major subjects. In the former programme for Grades VII and VIII, 600 of the 1,500 minutes a week was the assignment for English. Next came Arithmetic with 225 minutes, Elementary Science with 170 minutes, and Citizenship with 125 minutes. The burden of proof rests on those who maintain that this excess in time allotment for English was justified by results. A large amount of the purely formal class instruction was undoubtedly wasted effort. English in the new programme will be interwoven with other subjects. There will be less time for the formal teaching of Literature and for formal exercises in Language. There will be more time for the expression of the living thought that springs from experiences of daily life.
In Grades VII and VIII there is a special allotment of time to be used for *remedial instruction in English*.
6. The material chosen for English studies will be socially useful. It will become "functional" through being both real and meaningful to the pupil. In Literature, it will consist of contemporary rather than classical selections, and will embody social ideals that are closely related to the Social Studies. It will not exclude entirely the offerings of magazines, newspapers, the photoplay, and the radio. In Language, the material will relate definitely to practical "speech situations." It will aid in training pupils to do well some of the things that they will certainly be required to do in later life, no matter how badly they perform, and will give them the confidence that comes with the ability to perform well.
7. The method of testing will give both teachers and pupils much more freedom than was possible in the former course. The literature test will be largely a test in "silent reading" with some attempt to test appreciation by means of "sight" selections. The reproduction of factual information will be minimized. The language test will be a test, not of what the pupil can write about the theory of correct and effective expression, but of how well he can put the theoretic principles into practice. Correct usage and properly constructed sentences are the things that will count.

I.—LITERATURE AND READING

No sharp line can be drawn between *Literature* and *Reading* as parts of the programme in *English*. The *intensive* study, usually of selected masterpieces, for purposes that include interpretation, appreciation, edification, and acquisition of sound standards of discrimination and judgment, is what has traditionally been regarded as the subject of *Literature*. A more extensive type of study, less directly under the guidance of the teacher, and less for edification than enjoyment, has commonly been called *Supplementary Reading*. Beside this may be placed *recreational, leisure, or "free"* reading. Then there is reading of the *work type*, which is required in the study of a textbook or the gathering of information. There is also *Oral Reading*, for the edification or entertainment of listeners. Finally, there are exercises for practice in the technical skills of silent and oral reading. Throughout these types, the difference lies in the *purpose of the reading* rather than in the material used.

Objectives:

The question of objectives in the teaching of Literature is one on which it is difficult to find agreement amongst teachers. The following include the more important objectives:

1. Familiarity with some, at least, of the literature that has been pronounced as good by competent authorities.
2. The development and acquisition of a taste for good literature, and of approved standards of appreciation, judgment and evaluation in respect to literature.
3. Enlargement of the individual's store of experience through contributions from indirect or "vicarious" experience, with consequent enrichment of mental life and personal culture.
4. A broad and sympathetic understanding of the patterns of human behavior, with special reference to the individual in society, and to social problems and ideals.
5. Refinement and sublimation of the emotions.
6. Inculcation of the habit of reading good books as a worthy recreation for leisure.
7. Improvement in speech and written expression through an appreciation of the range and resources of the English language.
8. Appreciation of the effects produced by different types of verse and metre.

Not all of these objectives are the concern of teachers in the Intermediate School. Here the value of a course in Literature will be judged mainly by the extent to which it guides the pupils in *exploring the field of reading, enlarging their reading interests, and finding good material of the type they most enjoy.* Different pupils will have different tastes. Literature that is universal and timeless, making its appeal to all men for all time, is by no means plentiful. One need not expect, therefore, that all the pupils of a class will appreciate and enjoy all, or even many, of the selections in a school "anthology". The material selected for pupils' reading should represent a range of types wide enough to give the individual some *freedom in choosing* what appeals to his personal interests. There is a fair chance that pupils whose interests have been aroused will learn to like the flavor of at

least some kinds of good reading, and will leave school equipped with the habit of seeking enjoyment and recreation in good books.

In this outline there are *five* divisions of Literature and Reading: (1) Intensive Literature; (2) Extensive Literature, consisting of Individual Reading and Free Reading; (3) Oral Reading; (4) Work-type Reading; and (5) Remedial Reading.

1.—INTENSIVE LITERATURE

The older teaching of Literature was appropriate to the days when books were scarce. It made use of a small number of select classics which the teacher expounded with labored exegesis while the whole class listened, and learned to echo the opinions and *dicta* of the master. In an extreme form, the procedure became a kind of mystic and esoteric cult, with the teacher officiating as hierophant. The usual effect was to breed such a dislike for literature that pupils in later life would seldom pick up a serious book, lest it turn out to be the same kind of thing that they studied in school. For *intensive* teaching of this predominantly *formal* type, engaging the class as a whole in a prolonged analytical study of a few selections, there is little place outside the university.

In the Intermediate School, the *formal* teaching of Literature must be diluted with *informal* discussions, and relieved by extensive reading, in both of which there is more freedom for personal enjoyment.

Intensive Literature will therefore include *Formal Teaching and Study* and *Group Reading with Informal Discussion*.

Formal Teaching and Study.

The traditional formal "lesson" in Literature can give place to the laboratory method of teaching with good results. Since there is now less class time for English on the programme, more reading will be required from the pupils. Much of the factual or informational material that was formerly taught in the Literature class will now be correlated with other subjects. Group discussion will take the place of labored essays and reports. The prescription of selections has been "*lessened and loosened*". Occasions for the use of *formal teaching* will therefore be relatively few in number and limited to the following purposes:

1. To help the class appreciate the worth and literary excellence of a few selections of outstanding merit, by inducing a mental or emotional attitude favorable to appreciation.
2. To recapitulate the characteristics of a group of selections chosen for comparative study; or to summarize the points brought out in a series of discussions.
3. To generalize the pupils' knowledge of the elements of literary ornament: rhythm, rhyme, metre, word harmony, figures of speech, vivid pictures, etc.
4. To have the class "sample" a new selection of an unfamiliar type, which might otherwise be left untasted.
5. To check up on the mental effort put forth by the class, and to test for growth in the ability of discriminate and evaluate.

Group Reading with Informal Discussions.

A considerable number of selections will be assigned for reading during the regular class periods, or during study periods, but *not* for home reading. Usually

the teacher may act as "coach" for the class, offering as many stimulations as possible, suggesting ways of getting the most enjoyment from a given selection, and advising with respect to the use of a dictionary and reference books, or supplying himself any necessary information. Occasionally the teacher may decide that some of the following preliminary procedures are necessary:

- (i) Linking the selection with the pupils' own experience.
- (ii) Suggesting a comparison with selections already taken.
- (iii) Recreating the atmosphere in which the narrative is set.
- (iv) Inducing an attitude favorable to the imaginative or emotional appeal of the selection.

If the selection has dramatic situations, or musical, lyrical or rhetorical qualities, one or two good oral readers may be asked to *make special preparation* for reading the selection, or parts of it, to the class.

After the reading, the teacher may now and again take the lead in discussing with the class the behavior of characters or the thoughts and feelings of the author, watching the reaction of the class as a whole, and noting the effect of the selection on the attitudes of individual pupils. If the teacher knows his class well, he can detect changes in attitude over a protracted period of time. Other suggestions are the following:

- (i) The life of the author should be "taken as read"; and the prolonged—and deadly—quizz on historical data, allusions, annotations, vocabulary, and other *minutiae* should be omitted in the *Literature class*. Here the aim is enjoyment rather than pedantic information.
- (ii) The discussion should deal with broad aspects of the selection: central theme, main events, or general impressions.
- (iii) It is impossible to make a class see *all* of the beauties or the excellencies of a selection. The teacher's treatment of the artistry and aesthetic qualities is most effective when it consists of a few simple explanations or brief comments, accompanied by oral reading.
- (iv) Short informal discussions by the pupils are usually of more value than formal written reports. The pupils should be able to make definite statements about their impressions, and to refer specifically to passages that support their statements. The discussion should spring from the selection itself, and not from outside references. Adequate comprehension is a pre-requisite for appreciation.
- (v) The informal class discussion will resemble the social discussion at meetings of an informal literary club, the teacher participating as a seasoned member.
- (vi) *The measure of successful work is the pupils' evident desire to talk freely about their experiences with literature, and to read other selections or books of the same or better quality in their free time. Neither teacher nor pupils should have any concern about preparation for an examination.*

Memorization.

The memorization of passages from literature selections has frequently become a mere device for assuring the pupils of some "easy marks" on the final examina-

ation. The disappearance of the examination objective will make necessary a re-adjustment of the pupils' attitude towards memorization. The desire to memorize will be in direct proportion to the intensity of appreciation and enjoyment. Pupils will retain favorite lines or passages without much effort, just as they remember a good joke or an amusing story. They will not respond to a procedure in which memorization is regularly the final stage, taking the form of an imposed task.

Before pupils attempt to memorize poetry, they should be familiar with many selections, some of which have been read aloud in class. Individual pupils will then be in a position to choose for memorization passages that make a special appeal. The teacher will encourage a choice of the best passages, and will suggest methods of memorizing that are psychologically sound and effective. Retention can be made permanent by "spaced repetitions", in class programmes or other audience situations.

Pupils who enjoy literature will memorize 100-150 lines, or more, of poetry.

2.—EXTENSIVE LITERATURE

Extensive Literature comprises *Individual Reading* and *Free Reading*. It also includes some reference in class to *Photoplays* and *Radio Broadcasts*, and to *Newspapers* and *Periodicals*.

The general objectives are the same as for Intensive Literature. There is also an important specific objective: that of encouraging the pupil to read full-length books in order that he may develop an interest in independent reading. The activities required do not engage the class as a whole at one time. Individual pupils, or small groups of pupils, read under the guidance of the teacher, either during their free time at school, or at home.

Individual Reading.

Pupils are required to select a few books for Individual Reading from a *prescribed list*, and to read them *in the classroom or the school library* during their study periods, or other free periods. *They should not be asked to read these books at home.* The number of books required is *two* for Grade VII, *three* for Grade VIII, and *four* for Grade IX. (See the List of Authorized Reading, below.)

The teacher's procedure will be much the same as that outlined above for Informal Discussion, but it will be applied to individual pupils, or to small groups that are reading the same book. By means of short informal conferences from time to time, either with individuals or with groups, the teacher will keep in touch with the progress that the pupils are making, and invite oral reviews, and discussion of such matters as the setting, the characters, outstanding incidents, vivid scenes, or other features of special interest. Written reports or tests should *not* be used as check-up devices.

Free Reading.

Free Reading is based on the fundamental principle that *the habit of reading good books comes only through enjoyment, and never through compulsion.* It is reading that the pupil is free to do, or not to do, as he chooses. Free reading will

be done at home, where the pupil may now and again exercise his right to choose a poor book as well as a good one. He will learn to discriminate by reading both kinds. There is a general prejudice against prescribed reading, which it will take our schools a long time to overcome. Many adults still think of literature as the kind of thing that is read in schools, but nowhere else. Adolescent pupils are susceptible to the influences of their community. They want to read, not classics, but books that they hear about—books by contemporary authors that “are being read”. In this connection, the influence of film plays and radio programmes should not be overlooked.

It is to be expected that the teacher will guide his pupils in their choice of material for free reading. *The guidance should be systematic, but so unobtrusive that the pupils are not directly aware of it.* The teacher who is well informed about juvenile books, and who at the same time knows his pupils well enough to be acquainted with their personal likes, dislikes and aspirations, can do some very effective work by suggesting for each pupil books that are suited to the pupil's present experience and level of comprehension. If the teacher's advice is really helpful, the pupils will soon acquire the habit of discussing their reading *frankly* with the teacher.

Both the classroom and the school library should be places *where reading stimulations and opportunities abound*. Book lists, book jackets, and interesting illustrations from books may be posted in the classroom. Book lists should include some short stories, fiction, descriptions of travel, practical applications of science, biography, and drama, suited to each of the three grades. For each grade there should be a range of choice corresponding to differences in mental capacity.

Free reading, like all other activities of the Intermediate School, should be *exploratory*. Pupils should therefore be encouraged to venture occasionally into fields of reading other than those with which they are most familiar.

The value of the course in Literature as a whole depends on the quality of the pupils' free reading. The final test is simply this: Are the pupils reading more and better books?

N.B.—It is the intention of the Department of Education to publish a classified list of books suitable for the free reading of pupils in the Elementary, the Intermediate and the High School.

In the meantime, teachers should consult the catalogue issued by the School-Book Branch.

Photoplays and Radio Broadcasts.

Film plays and radio programmes reflect popular standards of taste. The entertainment provided makes use of the common forms of literary expression, and should therefore be discussed regularly as part of the course in Extensive Literature. Better programmes will come when higher standards of criticism are generally employed. The Intermediate School can perform a valuable service in developing in pupils an intelligently critical attitude towards these programmes. The teacher should provoke and guide discussion, but keep it free and frank. Any display of superiority on his part tends to produce a situation in which the pupils learn merely “to predict with accuracy whether a specified photoplay or broadcast is one of which the teacher will approve.”

Newspapers and Periodicals.

Newspapers and magazines make approximately nine-tenths of the reading diet for adults. The Intermediate School cannot disregard this fact.

Much of the material in newspapers and periodicals is intended for work-type rather than recreational reading. Nevertheless, it is possible to discuss standards of literary merit by reference to newspaper editorials or fiction, and to magazine fiction or poetry. A useful study can be made of the best available newspapers, magazines and other periodicals. Magazine fiction should get some attention in discussion about the pupils' free reading.

3.—ORAL READING

The day of "relay reading" in the "literature lesson" has now passed, to the entire satisfaction of literature classes. Oral reading, as one of the arts of social entertainment, is now being revived by the radio. Oral Reading is of value in the classroom for the following purposes:

- (i) To stimulate the appreciation of poetry and elevated prose. (*Audience reading.*)

The teacher, if a good oral reader, should interpret orally the beauty and effectiveness of passages from the literature selections notable for their melody, or for dramatic or other outstanding qualities. No pupil should be asked to read such passages who has not made *special preparation*.

- (ii) To present to the class passages that have been cited for comparison or illustration.
- (iii) To exhibit the pleasing effect of deliberate tempo, correct pronunciation, clear enunciation, full vowel sounds, and good tone quality.
- (iv) To provide for improvement in speech.

Practice in Oral Reading is an excellent training for public speaking. It is an important part of Voice and Speech Training; and a necessary adjunct to work in Dramatics.

(See the outline for *Dramatics*, and the section on *Voice and Speech Training* in the *Programme of Studies for the Elementary School*.)

The work in *Choral Speech*, begun in the Elementary School, may be continued in the Intermediate School. (See the *Programme of Studies for the Elementary School*.)

4.—WORK-TYPE READING

In reading of this type, the dominant purpose is not enjoyment, but comprehension with economy of time. The skills required are those of *silent reading*.

Work-type reading is the basic tool for work in Social Studies, General Science, Mathematics, and other subjects. It occurs in the following forms:

- (i) *Discursive reading*, as in the rapid scanning of newspapers and magazines, or in browsing among books.
- (ii) *Selective reading*, as when information is to be gathered from different paragraphs, chapters, or books, and used in a *report*.
- (iii) *Problem or study reading*—the most common form in school work.

- (iv) *Reference reading*, in which material is not only gathered from different sources, but also weighed and evaluated.

Proficient reading is a process of complex reasoning. It involves finding the main idea, noting details, drawing inferences, following directions, pausing for mental reviews, and varying the rate to suit special purposes.

There are different *rates*, as well as different *forms*, of work-type reading, corresponding to different kinds of material, and different purposes of the reader. There is *skimming*, or very rapid scanning for topical or general ideas; *rapid* reading for getting the gist or for review; *normal-rate* reading, where the material is of average difficulty, or the purpose is recreation; and *careful* reading, where difficult material is read for study.

Grade VII.

Pupils whose reading ability has developed to the level of Grade VII should have acquired all of the basic reading skills. They should be able to comprehend words, phrases, sentences, or paragraphs without any trouble from eye-span or word recognition. They should be able to get the main thought of a paragraph and state it in concise form; and also to follow directions requiring comprehension. When they meet a new word, they should be able either to infer its meaning from the context or to find the meaning in a dictionary. They should also possess a normal reading vocabulary, and use different rates of reading.

At the beginning of the school term the teacher should provide for a thorough check-up on the reading skills and abilities of Grade VII pupils, with special reference to comprehension, speed and vocabulary. It is not uncommon to find pupils at this level who have only one rate for reading. The standard for normal-rate reading in Grade VII is 175-200 words per minute. The use of standardized tests is recommended.

Grade VIII.

In this grade, the pupils should be able to do the greater part of their reading at the normal rate, reserving the slow rate for difficult material that requires study. They should also exhibit a fair degree of skill in rapid reading.

Grade IX.

In this grade, the essential requirement is ability to select important details and grasp their relationship to the main thought. Pupils of good mental endowment will now make further progress, but only through their own efforts.

In all three grades, general improvement in silent reading will come from work in the content subjects. The interpretation of mathematical problems, for example, furnishes training in comprehension, speed and vocabulary. Science work requires the ability to follow directions, and also to recognize a general principle that binds facts together. Social Studies emphasize the importance of logical coherence. But pupils of weak ability in silent reading may require special remedial training before they can make satisfactory progress in these subjects.

5.—REMEDIAL READING

The programme provides for Remedial English, which comprises Remedial Reading and Remedial Language.

Remedial Reading is intended to cover the special training required by pupils who are weak in *oral reading* or in *silent reading*. Reference has already been made to the former. A few suggestions are set down here with respect to the latter.

The material for remedial exercises in silent reading should be of the factual or informational type, both because this kind of material makes the testing and scoring easy, and because the dominant purpose of the reader is comprehension, and not appreciation or enjoyment. Good material can be found in the textbooks, or pupils' reference books, for the content subjects.

Other good material for Grades VII and VIII can be found in *The New Silent Readers*—A Basal Activity Series, Books VII and VIII (John C. Winston Co.).

The material of the following books is of interest to high school pupils, but ranges in reading difficulty from the fourth-grade to the ninth-grade level:

Adventure Bound—Persing and Leary (Harcourt, Brace & Co.).

New Horizons—Miller and Leary (Harcourt, Brace & Co.).

The teacher who is planning work in remedial reading should consult a good reference book, such as one of the following:

Reading and Literature in the Elementary School—Paul McKee (Houghton, Mifflin Co.).

Reading and Study—G. A. Yoakam (Macmillan Co.).

The Improvement of Reading—A. I. Gates (Macmillan Co.).

Silent and Oral Reading—C. R. Stone (Houghton, Mifflin Co.).

Silent Reading—J. A. O'Brien (Macmillan Co.).

AUTHORIZED READING

Readers have been authorized for use in Grades VII, VIII and IX; and books have been prescribed for *individual reading* in each of these grades.

Readers.

GRADE VII—*The Canada Book of Prose and Verse*, Book I (Ryerson—Macmillan).

GRADE VIII—*Life and Literature*, Book II (Gage—Nelson).

GRADE IX—*Modern Literature for Schools*—Leaver (Copp, Clark Co.).

For each grade, the teacher, in consultation with the pupils, should choose from 30 to 35 selections for *Intensive Literature*, and about 15 selections for *Oral Reading*.

Besides these, each pupil should choose about 25 selections for his *Individual Reading*.

IMPORTANT NOTICE.—In one-room schools, or schools in which Grades VII, VIII and IX occupy the same room, the three grades will be combined for Literature and Reading, and will all use the Grade IX Reader during the year 1937-38. During the following year the Grade VII Reader will be used, and during the third year, the Grade VIII Reader.

Books for Individual Reading.

GRADE VII—(One book from each Section must be read by the pupil).

- 1.—*Fiction*—The Hill: Vachell; Huckleberry Finn: Mark Twain; Little Women: Alcott.
- 2.—*Non-Fiction*—The Heroes: Charles Kingsley; Just So Stories: Kipling; Robin Hood and the Men of Greenwood: Henry Gilbert.

GRADE VIII—(One book from each Section must be read by the pupil).

- 1.—*Fiction*—Jim Davis: John Masfield; Master Skylark: John Bennett; Judy of York Hill: Ethel H. Bennett.
- 2.—*Non-Fiction and Biography*—Sir Walter Raleigh: John Buchan; Wild Animals I Have Known: Ernest T. Seton; Adrift on an Ice Pan: Grenfell.
- 3.—*Poetry and Drama*—Longer Ballads for Boys: Annotated by H. A. Frise; Poems of Action, Third Series; Eight Modern Plays: John Hampden.

GRADE IX—(One book from each Section must be read by the pupil).

- 1.—*Short Stories*—A Book of Good Stories: G. F. McNally; A Kipling Reader; Adventures of Sherlock Holmes: Conan Doyle.
- 2.—*Fiction*—Puck of Pook's Hill: Kipling; The Call of the Wild: Jack London; Anne of the Island: Montgomery.
- 3.—*Non-Fiction including Biography*—Boy's Life of Colonel Lawrence: Thomas; Arctic Patrols: Campbell; The Girl in White Armour: A True Story of Joan of Arc: Albert B. Prince.
- 4.—*Poetry and Drama*—Courtship of Miles Standish: Longfellow; One Act Plays: A Collection of Fifteen Short Plays: Goldstone.

II.—LANGUAGE

A new course and series of textbooks in Language for Grades VII, VIII and IX is in preparation.

During the year 1937-38, teachers and pupils will use the same course and textbooks that were in use during 1936-37:

Grades VII and VIII:

- Learning to Speak and Write*, Book 2—Dickie.
Hints and Suggestions for the foregoing (Teachers' Reference).
Grammar—Cowperthwaite, Marshall and Sullivan.
Canadian Speller, Book 3—Quance (Teachers' Reference).

Grade IX:

- Sense and Structure in English Composition*—Diltz and Cochrane.
Century Handbook of Writing (Teachers' Reference).

Recommended Guide for Teachers.

Teachers are strongly recommended to consult either of the following sets of pupils' textbooks for reference until the new course in *Language* is available:

- Junior English in Action*, Revised Edition, Books One, Two and Three—Tressler and Shelmadine (Copp, Clark Co.).
The Open Door English Series for the Junior High School, Books I, II and III—Scott, Peet, Robinson and Bigelow (Houghton Mifflin Co.).

SOCIAL STUDIES

INTRODUCTION

"The scope of the social studies embraces the entire field of human relations, the significant movements of human history, and the problems and issues of contemporary society. Consideration of the customs, culture and social practices of the people of the neighborhood, State, nation, and world are the province of the social studies. The social studies include those fields of human experience that deal with man-to-man relationships considered in the subjects of history, geography, economics, civics, sociology, home economics, and psychology. Social movements and social forces can best be understood and improved when concepts and materials are drawn from these fields and integrated by the learner around large centres of human interest. This course of study accepts this unitary view as contrasted with that of history, civics, geography, etc., pursued as separate fields of subject matter."—"The Tentative Course of Study" for the State of Virginia, Grade VIII, page 25.

The course in Social Studies for the Intermediate Grades—VII, VIII and IX—of Alberta schools will introduce to the pupils the problems of modern civilization in their historical and geographical setting. As its name implies, it is socially directed, dealing essentially with the "here" and "now," and subordinating the "there" and "then." It is in no sense an attempt to camouflage history, geography and civics. When the content of these formal subject categories sheds any light on the problems under study, it is then introduced. Frequently the pupil's textbook will be the community in which he lives.

There can be no questioning the importance of introducing youth to an understanding of contemporary civilization. Present conditions throw into sharp relief the vital necessity of understanding modern life and the modern world. Thus our schools are confronted with the difficult task of educating pupils to become informed, thinking citizens. The rapid development of industrial civilization has produced problems of living together that baffle even the keenest adult brain. In a very few years the generation of children now in our classrooms is to confront those problems. Their reaction to them will be determined by the social spirit they have imbibed in the schools of today.

The course aims to produce good national and international citizens, intelligent, emotionally stable and capable of rational, independent thought. The good citizen should understand the place of the individual, the meaning of society and the means of progress.

Interest is the dynamic motivator of all that man does best. These courses should be so treated that they will interest the student. The mere acquisition of factual information is not education. Mental growth is essential. The student should develop a technique of investigation—individual and co-operative discovery and evaluation of facts, organization and application of findings, and formation of tentative judgments and attitudes. Thus Social Studies should contribute to the production of the desirable qualities of character and conduct found in the good citizen.

Fundamental Objectives.

The fundamental objectives of the Social Studies programme are therefore the following:

1. To facilitate an understanding of our social and economic realities; in other words, to acquaint students with enough historical and geographical facts to enable them to comprehend at their level our present-day economic and political institutions and practices.
2. To develop the ability to see both sides of a question, and to think independently on a basis of facts.
3. To induce an attitude of fair-mindedness, and a desire to co-operate with others for the welfare of the community.
4. To train students in the use of efficient methods for securing and organizing information that is available in reference books, atlases and charts; and to extend their use of such tools and pictures, diagrams, maps, graphs, and statistical data.
5. To develop an appreciation of Canadian culture.
6. To make clear to students the effect of mechanization on the production of goods and services, and on developments in transportation and communication.
7. To help students understand the contributions of explorers, frontiersmen and statesmen to the growth and development of Canada and the British Commonwealth; and to understand the contribution made by Canada to the trade of the Commonwealth and the world.
8. To foster an attitude of tolerance and respect for world peoples, and a sympathetic understanding of their social and economic problems.

NOTE.—In this connection, teachers are asked to refer to the *Course in Social Studies in the Programme for the Elementary School*, and to read there the introduction, and the statement of objectives and minimum requirements.

Pupil Activities.

The basic principle of procedure in this course is that *learning is an active process*. The outline abounds in activities that call for pupil experimentation, individual research, and creative self-expression. The social studies classroom, instead of being a place where children “learn” history, geography and civics, is to be a real laboratory, where co-operation, initiative, originality and responsibility are developed.

Here are a few suggestions adapted from Rugg’s *Teacher’s Guide to the Social Studies Series* (Ginn & Co.):

1. Let the pupils work out their own class organization for the development of problems, electing officers, appointing committees, etc.
2. Give the pupil committees responsibility for class excursions, for managing the library, for producing plays, etc.
3. Encourage pupils to suggest topics for open-forum discussion. Let them introduce current controversial problems in which they are interested, and which are related to the problem under study. In this way the pupils will not only develop open-mindedness, but they will also grasp the relation of the problem to the life of today.

4. Encourage pupils to ask questions of speakers as reports are being presented, to develop a vigorous interplay of pupil minds and to stimulate thoughtful pupil activity in the work of the course.

5. Permit and encourage individual reactions, fostering the development of individual characteristics whenever possible.

The Activities following each Problem are suggestive only. They are to be used, modified or rejected as the judgment of the teacher dictates. Activities suitable to one class or teacher may not suit another. Each teacher and class must feel free to develop those interests which seem most fruitful and stimulating.

In a few instances formal debates are suggested, but the free discussion of the open-forum appears to be of greater value, as it involves the whole class.

As pupils mature in their ability to conduct an independent investigation, they may be assigned some major topic for study and report.

Pupil activities should be varied:

- (a) Discussions by the pupils rather than presentation by the teacher.
- (b) Generous readings from supplementary books, magazines, and newspapers.
- (c) Oral and written reports by individuals and by committees.
- (d) Open-forum work in which all pupils have a chance to contribute.
- (e) A work-book containing diagrams, sketches, charts, graphs, summaries, stories, class memos, and map work.
- (f) Circle diagrams and time lines to show development changes over a period of time.
- (g) A scrap-book containing cartoons, pictures and clippings, suitably labelled, and arranged under problem headings.
- (h) Possible excursions to manufacturing plants or utilities.
- (i) Use of such statistical references as: The World Almanac, The Canada Year Book, School Encyclopedias.

The Suggested Content.

N.B.—The following paragraph cannot be made too emphatic. Teachers of Grade IX classes, especially, are asked to read it and re-read it.

The elaboration of the sub-topics for each problem is *not prescriptive*, but *purely suggestive*. The items of the sub-topics fall into natural groupings, each of which may become the immediate problem of some individual or committee. *Under no circumstances is each item to be "taught" in detail.* The teacher who attempts this procedure will complain that the course is too long; for he will find that he cannot complete it within the school year. *All the pupils are not expected to study all the items of every sub-topic.* Different pupils or committees will take different items and report to the class, which will be responsible as a whole only for the gist of these reports, and for outstanding principles and generalizations. *Teachers are advised to govern their distribution of time by the number of class and open-forum periods which appears at the end of each problem outline.*

The course aims to raise problems; it makes no pretense of solving them. To solve them is the function of adult society. If the teacher gets the right perspective of the course, he will cease to concern himself with the minute details of every problem; and in the meantime his pupils will grow into social understanding.

Correlations.

The course is planned to afford pupils an opportunity to draw on various fields of knowledge for an interpretation of social problems. It is suggested that this will prove an effective method of off-setting the baneful influence of compartmentalized knowledge. A variety of correlated activities is suggested, and alert teachers will seize every opportunity to multiply the suggestions.

Visual Aids.

The use of projected pictures has come to be recognized as a valuable aid to the teacher, and this is particularly true in connection with the new Intermediate Programme of Studies for which a great deal of material is available. The main source of supply of visual instruction equipment and material for Alberta schools is the *Department of Extension of the University of Alberta*, and detailed information may be obtained on application to the Director. The Department has over 500 sets of lantern slides, a quantity of still film rolls, and a large number of reels of motion-picture film, many of which are related to the new programme.

Visual aids are of special value in the teaching of Social Studies.

The Open Forum.

No outcome of this course is more important than that brought about through open-forum discussions. There is, first of all, the practice of each pupil in alert thinking on his feet. In the second place, there is the development of tolerant understanding in its two-fold aspect,—open-mindedness and critical-mindedness. With the creation of these two attitudes, there is developed an immediate and effective antidote against indoctrination by adult influence in the out-of-school environment.

The Pupil's Notebook.

The notebook should be of the loose-leaf type to facilitate the insertion of new material, as the student meets it in the extensive reading which is a feature of the course. The fact that a topic has been concluded should not mean that any related material which the pupil may discover in his later reading is to be ignored. Every effort should be made to keep each problem alive and current throughout the year.

The notebook becomes the pupil's personal record of the development of each problem. It should contain all reading summaries, lists of references, drawings, maps, cartoons, synopses of papers read, and reports of personal investigations. *It should never degenerate into a repository for dictated notes.*

The Division of Work for Grades VII, VIII and IX.

The intermediate School programme in Social Studies comprises three courses:

Section A, for Grade VII;

Section B, for Grade VIII; and

Section C, for Grade IX.

Sections A and B constitute a two-year cycle. In ungraded schools, therefore, and in schools where Grades VII and VIII are combined, Section B will be taken with both grades during the year 1937-38, and each alternate year thereafter; and Section A will be taken with both grades during the year 1938-39, and each alternate year thereafter.

Section C will be taken with Grade IX during the year 1937-38, and each year thereafter.

In graded schools, during the year 1937-38, and each year thereafter, Section A will be taken with Grade VII, Section B with Grade VIII, and Section C with Grade IX.

Textbooks:

The textbook authorized for the use of Grade IX students (Section C) in September, 1937, is *The World of Today*, by McDougall and Patterson.

No textbook has been authorized for use in Grades VII and VIII. For these grades it is recommended that teachers arrange to have a *classroom library* composed of books selected from lists for the Minimum Library, the Secondary Library, and the Supplementary Library, as set forth below. For a class of *five* students, there must be available on the *classroom shelf* at least *one* copy of each of the books of the Minimum Library. For larger classes the classroom shelf will be proportionately larger.

As the resources of the school permit, there should be accessions to the classroom shelf from the lists for the Secondary and the Supplementary libraries.

Old copies of the books named in the three lists, and of other useful books, will be found in most schools or communities. New books can be added each year, with the result that in a few years every Intermediate School should have a good working library for Social Studies.

Classroom Libraries and Reference Books.

For the successful completion of *any of the three courses* it is essential that the pupil shall have at his disposal a *classroom library*, or a school library, rather than the single textbook. The pupils should be encouraged to bring books from home, to consult local public libraries, and *to make a survey of the reading resources of the community*—in books, magazines, periodicals and newspapers.

With respect to the following lists it may be said that *books listed in the Minimum Library are indispensable*. As circumstances permit, additional books should be provided from Secondary Library, which though not indispensable is very desirable. Thereafter books may be added to the classroom shelf from the Supplementary Library.

Minimum Library: Grades VII and VIII

Our Country and Its People (Section A); McDougall and Paterson—Ryerson Press—90c.

Our Empire and Its Neighbours (Section B); McDougall and Paterson—Ryerson Press.

A World Geography for Canadian Schols; Denton and Lord—J. M. Dent and Sons—\$1.25; *or*

Alberta Public School Geography; Gage and Company—\$1.40.

The Story of Britain and Canada; Paterson—Ryerson Press—95c; *or*

A New History of Great Britain and Canada; Wallace—Macmillan Company.

A Reader in Canadian Civics; Wallace—Macmillan Company—28c; *or*

Studies in Citizenship; McCaig—Educational Book Company.

Our Country Past and Present; Nida and Webb—Scott-Foresman—\$1.76.

Secondary Library: Grades VII and VIII

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World; Rugg—Ginn and Co.—\$2.00.
We Are Canadian Citizens; Goldring—J. M. Dent and Sons—\$1.00.
Human Use Geography, Book II; Smith—Winston—\$1.52.
Foreign Lands and Peoples; Smith—Winston.
Piers Plowman, Jr., Book V; E. N. Moyer—\$1.90.
House of History, Third Story—Thos. Nelson—95c.
Makers of the Modern World; Searle—Macmillan Company—85c.
Kingsway History, Book II (Revised); J. M. Dent and Sons—65c.
A History of Great Britain; Mowat—Oxford Press.

Supplementary Library: Grades VII and VIII

Canada Year Book or Canada, 1937—King's Printer, Ottawa.
How We Have Conquered Distance; Waddell and Bush—Macmillan Company—96c.
Britain and the Empire; Bellis—Macmillan Company—60c.
Britain and the Modern World; Bellis—Macmillan Company.
Oxford History Readers, Book IX—Oxford University Press—70c.
Builders of the Empire; Williamson—Oxford Press—\$1.00.
The Great Story of India—Oxford Press—35c.
Paths of Peace Series, Books I-V—Oxford Press—50c.
A Visit to a Woollen Mill; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Visit to a Cotton Mill; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Visit to a Coal Mine; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Day in a Shipyard; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
Native Races of the Empire Series; Hambly—Oxford Press—25c.
Tracing History Backwards, Books I-III; King, Hall and Boswell—J. M. Dent and Sons—55c.
Kingsway Social Geographies, Books I-IV; Young—Dent—65c.
Geography Europe and Asia; Barrows and Parker—Silver-Burdett.
World Wide Geographies, Book VI; Stowbridge—Oxford Press—90c.
World Wide Geographies, Book VIII; Stowbridge—Oxford Press—\$1.00.

Teacher's Reference:

Man's Achievement, Book II; Pahlow—Ginn and Co.—\$2.00.
Story of Civilization; Seary and Paterson—Ryerson Press.
The Modern World; McKay and Saunders—Ryerson Press—1.95.
The Making of American Civilization; Beard and Beard—Macmillan Co.—\$2.20.
Rich Land, Poor Land—Stuart Chase.

Minimum Library: Grade IX

The World of Today; McDougall and Paterson—Ryerson Press—\$1.00.
Commercial and Economic Geography; Morrison—Ryerson Press—80c; or
Manual for Geography I; Hilton—King's Printer—75c.
A World Geography for Canadian Schools; or
Alberta Public School Geography.
The Story of Britain and Canada; or
A New History of Great Britain and Canada.
A Reader in Canadian Civics; or
Studies in Citizenship.
Makers of the Modern World; Searle—Macmillan Company—85c.

Secondary Library: Grade IX

- Changing Governments and Changing Cultures; Rugg—Ginn and Co.—\$2.00.
Changing Civilizations in the Modern World; Rugg—Ginn and Co.—\$2.00.
We Are Canadian Citizens; Goldring—Dent—\$1.00.
Kingsway Histories, Book II (Revised)—Dent—65c.
Economic Geography; Jones—Holt—\$1.80.
Our Industrial World; Smith—Winston—\$1.75.
Raw Material and Colonies; League of Nations Society, Ottawa—75c.
Canada Year Book, *or* Canada, 1937.
World Almanac and Book of Facts; New York World-Telegram—80c.
How We Have Conquered Distance; Waddell and Bush—Macmillan and Co.—95c.
Modern Times; Prescott—Ryerson Press—90c.
House of History—Third Storey.
A History of Great Britain; Mowat—Oxford Press.

Supplementary Library: Grade IX

- Britain and the Modern World; Bellis—Macmillan Company—80c.
Paths of Peace Series, Books I-V; Oxford Press—50c.
A Visit to a Woolen Mill; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Visit to a Cotton Mill; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Visit to a Coal Mine; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
A Day in a Shipyard; Cooke—Oxford Press—35c.
World Wide Geographies, Book VIII; Stowbridge—Oxford Press—\$1.00.
Report of the Royal Commission on Price Spreads; King's Printer, Ottawa—\$1.00.
The Social Science Series: Rugg—Ginn and Company:
 Introduction to American Civilization (Book I).
 A History of American Civilization (Book III).
 A History of American Government and Culture (Book IV).
 Introduction to the Problems of American Culture (Book V).
 (Books II and VI of this Series are listed above.)
Microbe Hunters; De Kruif—Harcourt, Brace and Company.
Hunger Fighters; De Kruif—Harcourt, Brace and Company.
Our Changing Social Order; Gavian, Gray and Groves—Copp Clark.
The Native's Return; Louis Adamic—Harper and Bros.
Whitaker's Almanac—12 Warwick Lane, London, England—\$1.80.
The American Primers—University of Chicago Press (25c):
 Business and Government.
 Friends or Enemies.
 Jobs or the Dole.
 Money.
 Strikes.
 The Farm Business.
 You and Machines.
 Youth in the Depression.

Teacher's Reference:

- As for Sections A and B.

Magazines, Periodicals, Bulletins:

House of Commons Debates—King's Printer, Ottawa.

Canadian Geographic.

Reader's Digest—Pleasantville, New York.

Monthly News Sheet and Bulletins of the League of Nations Society, Canada—
Literature Service, League of Nations Society, Ottawa.

World Affairs: Current Events for Canadian Schools—23 Grenville St., Toronto
(Club rate of 75c for 5 copies, monthly.)

Canadian Comment—Current Publications Ltd., 23 Scott St., Toronto. (Monthly;
\$1.00 a year.)

World Wide—Witness Publishing Co., Montreal. (Weekly; \$3.00 a year.)

Current History—229 West 43rd St., New York. (Monthly; \$4.00 a year.)

Bulletin of International News—Royal Institute of International Affairs, Chatham
House, St. James' Square, London, England. (15s a year.)

Bulletins of the Dominion and Provincial Government Departments.

Health Bulletins issued by the Metropolitan Life Insurance Co., Ottawa.

The Beaver, a magazine published by the Hudson's Bay Co.

Newspapers.

Suggested Classroom Equipment

Movable desks or tables.

Tables for exhibits.

Bulletin boards in every available space.

Ample blackboard space.

Classroom library cupboard.

Stand for newspapers and magazines.

Filing cabinet for clippings and pictures.

Wall maps, charts and globes.

Newsprint paper, 24"×36".

Colored chalk.

Tempera colors.

Projection lantern.

A good dictionary, an atlas, and an encyclopaedia.

SECTION A: OUR COUNTRY AND ITS PEOPLE

(GRADES VII AND VIII)

Problem I.—How Canada Has Attracted Many Peoples.

Canada is a land of great natural wealth. Despite its rigorous winter climate it has proved a Mecca for many thousands of settlers from distant corners of the earth. In this Problem three topics will be examined: (1) What attracts settlers to Canada; (2) What are the racial origins of these settlers; (3) How people started crossing the seas.

A.—*The natural wealth of Canada has attracted settlers:* A brief survey of the important natural resources of Canada, including the more obvious natural features; the wealth of our seas, forests, soil and mines.

B.—*Canada is the direct heir of the culture of many races:* Comparison of Canadian Indians and Eskimo with Canadians of European and Asiatic stock as to

numbers; survey of school and community population with regard to racial origin; extend the survey to the Province and to the Dominion.

C.—How Canada was found:

1. **EUROPE IN THE MIDDLE AGES:** Low standard of living as compared with East; comparatively crude type of agriculture; trade only slightly developed. Stimulation of trade with resultant rise in standards of living due to Crusades, Moorish civilization in Spain, etc.; fabulous wealth of Far East; compare with tales of gold, oil, etc., in modern "booms"; travels of Marco Polo and others (briefly).
2. **TRADE ROUTES TO THE FAR EAST:** Physical and climatic difficulties to be overcome leading into a survey of chief physical and climatic features of Eurasia; strategic location of Constantinople, Alexandria, Genoa, Venice, Amsterdam, etc.
3. **TRADE IN SPICES:** Portuguese attempts to reach India and the Spice Islands (Moluccas and Philippines); Diaz; Vasco da Gama. Spanish voyages, Columbus and accidental discovery of New World; French and English voyages, Cabot, Cartier, and others. Avoid too much detail as the story phase of this period will have been covered in Division II; see item 3 of minimum requirements.

Time: 20 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A knowledge of the important physical and drainage features and climatic variations of Canada; of Eurasia.
2. An appreciation of the attractiveness of Canada to people of distant lands.
3. An appreciation of the significance of the rise in the standard of living since Mediaeval Times.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested by the outline.
2. Development of maps.
3. Develop graphs and diagrams showing racial distribution in Canada.
4. Family histories by pupils who can secure reliable information on family origins.
5. By pictures contrast Mediaeval and Modern methods of transportation.
6. Report on development of compass, astrolabe and other instruments of navigation.
7. Open-forum: Should Canada prohibit further immigration?

CORRELATIONS:

Health: How medicine was improved by contact with Eastern doctors.

Science: What is the debt of science to the wise men of the East?

REFERENCES:

Our Country and Its People—McDougall and Paterson.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Problem II.—How Canada Became French and Then English.

In this Problem there should be developed the story of how Canada's two most important racial stocks crossed the Atlantic. Concurrently with this story

there should be a survey made of the geography of Britain and France and a more thorough study made of the geography of Eastern Canada and Eastern United States.

FISH AND FURS

1. *Geography and earlier history of France in outline*: Location, extent, surface and climate. France in Middle Ages; contrast with England of same period; contrast both countries just prior to the French Revolution as to social and economic conditions. Natural resources; occupations of the people; their habits of living and thinking. Modern commercial and industrial centres.
2. *New France develops from trading post to colony*: Brief sketch to review earlier years under Champlain and the opening up of the interior by La Salle, La Vérendrye; the founding of the H.B. Co. Arrival of women in 1665 sets stage for vigorous development of colony under the direction of Talon; social life of the people; their occupations; trade with France and other countries. How French imperialism retarded development.
3. Contrast location, surface, extent and climate of British Isles with Alberta (avoid details). Religious, political and economic conditions in Tudor and Stuart times in England which caused migration to America. Atlantic seaboard colonies established; plantations as well as furs. Geography of Atlantic coastal plain. Comparison of growth of French and English colonies in America; rivalry in fur trade (Indians); wars between French and English (briefly); Canada becomes British. Trouble between English Atlantic Colonies and Mother Country; War of American Independence (briefly); coming of Loyalists to Canada.
4. Scottish and other settlements in Maritime Provinces, Ontario, on Red River, etc. Pioneer life. Farmer organizations come into being to improve social and economic status of rural dwellers, e.g., the Grange, etc.
Time: 40 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An increased knowledge of the main geographical features of Eastern Canada and Eastern United States.
2. An increased knowledge of the natural resources of Canada, Eastern U.S.A., and France and their relation to the activities of the people.
3. An appreciation of the qualities of character demanded of the pioneer in any age.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Committee and individual investigations and reports.
2. Writing of plays, stories and poems based on dramatic episodes of the period.
3. Develop illustrations depicting the social life of the period.
4. Pupils of Loyalist descent relate family histories.
5. Open-forum:
Were there no unemployed in pioneer times?
Should we scrap the machinery characteristic of our industrial civilization and live as our fur-trader ancestors lived?
6. Contrast old and new fishing and fur-getting methods.

CORRELATIONS:

1. Health: Health and sanitation in pioneer homes and communities; control of disease; hospitals, etc.
2. Science: Lack of modern conveniences due to ignorance of how science can be applied to improve human living.

REFERENCES:

Our Country and Its People—McDougall and Paterson.
The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.
A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.
Our Country Past and Present—Nida and Webb.

Problem III.—How Canada Then Received Settlers From Many Countries.

This is an example of the influence of a few basic inventions on human living and of how man by closer co-operation solves many of his most complex problems.

GRAIN FARMING

1. *Vast extent of prairies*: Lack of adequate natural transportation facilities as compared with Eastern Canada; soil and climate suited to production of grain; large scale transportation essential; the means already at hand through work of inventors in England and the United States. Brief sketch of Industrial Revolution in relation to transportation; early steam engines; travelling steam engine on land and water; George Stephenson and others; first Canadian railway.
2. *Union of eastern provinces under one government brings idea of including the western area to the Pacific and makes this possible*: Taking over of the west from the H.B. Co. Mounted Police; promise of railway to British Columbia; the problem of financing a transcontinental railway; Macdonald, Stephen, Smith and others; period of construction. Misunderstanding by Metis and Indians; uprisings in 1870 and 1885; Provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta come into the Confederation.
3. *Development of large-scale farming in the West*: Compare with Western United States. New farming methods introduced to overcome special difficulties; early ripening varieties of grain; dry-land farming; irrigation; improved farm machinery; the problem of the Dry Belt. Competing railway lines in West open up new areas; resources other than grain tapped incidentally, coal, oil, etc.
4. *Homesteading*: Overcrowding in industrialized Europe; free lands in Western Canada; compare with Western United States; end of homesteading in United States; enormous influx of settlers into Canada; effect of such development upon Western Canada and upon farmers and town workers in European countries. Effect on the farmer of the control of the grain trade by the railway and elevator companies; organized effort of farmers breaks monopoly control, e.g., U.G.G., U.F.A., etc.
5. *Geography of Cordilleran Region*: Finding of gold in California and then farther north; B.C. gold "rush"; gold, fish and lumber combine to attract settlers. B.C. a Province; railway speeds up development of natural resources, Panama canal adds new trade route. Asiatic immigration.

6. *Geography of Laurentian Plateau*: Discovery of mineral wealth in Yukon, Northern Manitoba, Ontario, Quebec, N.W.T., Alberta coal and oil, etc. Rise of new manufacturing industries of Eastern Canada based on mineral products.
7. Review of geographical features, natural resources, industries and commercial centres of Canada.

Time: 40 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An increased knowledge of the geographical features and natural resources of Canada.
2. An increased knowledge of the location and importance of the more important centres of population in Canada.
3. An appreciation of the social significance of the development of speedier and cheaper means of transportation.
4. An appreciation of the part played by our native born Canadians and immigrants in the development of the West.
5. Development of an appreciation of the interdependence of manufacturing areas and agricultural and mineral areas.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Committee investigations and reports.
2. History of the local community.
3. Display of the natural resources of the local community.
4. Development of special maps, graphs, etc.
5. Draw a series of pictures to show contrasts in ways people make a living in Canada.
6. Draw a series of pictures to show the contrast between the West of 1900 and of today.
7. Open-forum: Are there any parts of Canada that can be economically independent of every other part?
8. Contrast old and new methods of lumbering, fishing, mining, etc.
9. Study new uses made of forest products: wood pulp, paper, rayon, etc.

CORRELATIONS:

1. Science:
 - (a) How science is being applied to the solution of the problems of the western farmer.
 - (b) How science has built up many industries using Canada's raw materials in new and strange ways.
2. Health: Civilization and its effect on the health of the Indian.

REFERENCES:

Our Country and Its People—McDougall and Paterson.
 The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.
 A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Problem IV.—The Homelands of our European and Asiatic Settlers.

This Problem involves a survey of the more important European and Asiatic countries, especially of those contributing most directly to the development of

Canada. An effort should be made to develop a picture of the social life of those older lands in order to gain some appreciation of the readjustments which must be made by newcomers in their homes across the seas. It is suggested that social and economic conditions in the countries mentioned below be studied in some detail and that other countries be taken by committees as time permits. Do not spend too much time on the geographical aspects.

1. *Scandinavian Countries*: Location, extent, surface and climate. Brief historical sketch; democratic government; Iceland. The people, their occupations, natural resources, habits of living and thinking; development of co-operative enterprises. Commercial and industrial centres.
2. *Germany*: Location, extent, surface and climate. Union of German states. The people, their occupations, habits of living and thinking; agricultural and mineral resources; commercial and industrial centres.
3. *Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)*: Location, extent, surface and climate. Social and economic conditions prior to Revolution. The people, their occupations, habits of living and thinking; agricultural and mineral resources; commercial and industrial centres.
4. *Italy*: Location, extent, surface and climate. Unification of Italy. The people, their occupations, habits of living and thinking; natural resources; commercial and industrial centres.
5. *China*: Location, extent, surface and climate. Historical sketch; civil wars; relation with the European nations and Japan in more recent times. The people, their occupations, habits of living and thinking. Agricultural and mineral resources; commercial and industrial centres.

OR

Japan: Location, extent, surface and climate. Historical sketch. Industrialization along European lines compared with China. The people, their occupations, their ways of living and thinking. Natural resources. Commercial and industrial centres.

(Japan may be left to Grade IX, Problem 6. In dealing with China stress Japan's shortage of minerals needed by an industrial nation.)

6. Review of main geographical features of Eurasia.

Time: 50 class periods and 5 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An increased knowledge of the geography of Eurasia.
2. An appreciation of the national qualities of our more recent Canadian citizens of European and Asiatic descent.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Committee investigations and reports.
2. Further family histories, especially where the national background can be pictured vividly by costumes, dances, folk songs, etc.
3. Development of animated product maps.
4. Load ships for Canadian ports with products typical of the countries being studied.
5. Collect pictures illustrating industrial and social life of people being studied.

6. Open-forum: (1) Should Oriental immigrants be permitted to enter Canada? (2) Was Japan justified in seizing Manchuria? (3) Will the Ethiopians be happier under Italian rule?
7. Why are Japan and Russia, Japan and China, not on the friendliest terms?

CORRELATIONS:

1. Art: Study some of the typical art and architecture of the peoples mentioned in the outline.
2. Science: To what extent are the peoples mentioned in the outline using science to solve their problems.
3. Health: Compare the countries mentioned with respect to their health and sanitation standards.

REFERENCES:

Our Country and Its People—McDougall and Paterson.
 World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.
 Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Problem V.—How Canadians Live Together.

Though of many different racial stocks, Canadians live, work and play together in most complete harmony. Before we leave them let us make a survey of those local institutions which exert a Canadianizing influence.

The Community: Its needs, e.g., health, police and fire protection, education, etc., how these are controlled. Municipal (local) government. Importance of willing and intelligent co-operation in all matters affecting the community; resultant good effect of such co-operation of the whole of Canada so that its material resources may be developed or conserved wisely by and for an intelligent people.

Time: 20 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A knowledge of how the community is controlled and regulated.
2. An appreciation of the importance of intelligent co-operation between citizens and governments.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil investigations and reports.
2. Collection of pictures depicting varied phases of community activity.
3. Open-forum:
 1. Should the individual citizen assume any responsibility for the improvement of the community?
 2. How may we as pupils improve our community?

CORRELATIONS:

1. Science: How science is being called upon to solve problems of community living.
2. Art: How the community may be made more beautiful, e.g., flowers and trees about the school.

REFERENCES:

- Our Country and Its People—McDougall and Paterson.
A Reader in Canadian Civics—Wallace.

SECTION B: OUR EMPIRE AND OUR NEIGHBORS

(GRADES VII AND VIII)

Problem I.—Introductory: A Pre-view of the Empire.

This Problem introduces the major geographic divisions of the Empire with their diverse races, colors and creeds. In Section A the problem was the assimilation of Canada's peoples into a homogeneous whole; in Section B this problem assumes another form.

- (a) *The Heart of the Empire*: A visit to London, Buckingham Palace, Downing Street, the Imperial Parliament in session, Lombard Street, the Pool, British Museum, Shakespeare and Dickens, etc.
- (b) *Geographical Features of the British Isles*: Location and extent, coastal features, surface and drainage, climate, agricultural and mineral resources.
- (c) *Industrial Britain*: Industries, visits to mines, factories, fishing fleets, ship-building yards; Liverpool, Southampton and Portsmouth, Glasgow, Belfast, Londonderry, Newcastle, Cardiff, etc., as typical industrial and shipping centres.
- (d) *Britain across the Seas*: The major divisions of the Empire; diversity of race, color, language, creed, culture.

Time: 20 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A more extensive knowledge of the geographical features of the British Isles.
2. A knowledge of the location of the more important divisions of the Empire.
3. An appreciation of the problem and responsibility of directing the affairs of the varied human beings who constitute the British Empire.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Committee investigations and reports.
2. Collecting of pictures illustrating some special study.
3. Related map work—formal and animated.
4. A pageant of the peoples of the Empire.
5. Open-forum: Is the colonial Empire essential to Britain's prosperity?

CORRELATIONS:

Literature: Where the great masters of English lived and worked.

Art: British Art and Architecture. British landscapes and seascapes.

Science: The discoveries of such men as: Harvey, Newton, Faraday, Darwin, etc.

Dramatics: Creation of a simple pageant.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

- Our Empire and Our Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.
World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Problem II.—How Britain Became the Centre of World Trade.

This Problem involves Britain's development as a sea-power (commercial and naval) and the founding of the Colonial Empire.

- (a) *Britain changes from an agricultural to an industrial civilization:* In the middle ages a land of manors; typical features of manor life; the economic factors which led to the break-down of feudalism; Black Death; enclosures and sheep raising. Growth of village handicrafts. Development of improved textile machinery; introduction of power machinery and capital; factories replace home and village industry.
- (b) *Sea Power and World Trade:* Trade and commerce prior to Industrial Revolution; Elizabethan and Stuart traders and sailors; the trading companies, East India, H.B. Co., Virginia, London, etc.; rivalry with Spain, Holland and France; increase in output of manufactured goods due to Industrial Revolution brings marked increase in trade; the steamship. Increasing dependence on distant lands for raw materials and food; chief imports and sources. Extent to which Commonwealth is self-contained. Control of trade routes of world under modern conditions.

Time: 30 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An appreciation of how industrialism has transformed Britain.
2. An appreciation of the important part played by sea-power in Britain's expansion.
3. A knowledge of the chief sources of Britain's raw materials and foodstuffs.
4. A more extensive knowledge of the location of the major industrial centres and seaports of Britain.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Preparation of animated time-lines showing the development of (1) Textile production; (2) Iron and steel production; (3) Transportation on land and in air; (4) Expansion in exports and imports.
3. Develop maps showing Empire at different periods.
4. Collect or draw pictures of ships of different periods loaded with typical English exports or imports of the same periods.
5. Open-forum: Did British workers share properly in the increased wealth brought to England as a result of their work in the factories?

CORRELATIONS:

Science: How man was turning to science to find a solution of his industrial problems.

Art: The sailing ship in Art.

Health: Scurvy, the enemy of the sailor.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

Problem III.—How the Colonial Empire Was Founded.

This is the story of Britain's continued expansion overseas as her industrial development increased.

- (a) To preserve continuity, review briefly the colonies in America.
- (b) *In Europe:* Ireland is Britain's oldest possession; Irish resent conquerors; frequent rebellions. British efforts to improve relations; Irish Free State and Northern Ireland. Resources, industries and commercial centres.
- (c) *In Asia:* India prior to the British conquest; people, customs, religion. Geographic and climatic features; agricultural and mineral resources. The B.E.I. Co., Clive, Hastings, the Mutiny. Transformation under British control; introduction of European industrialism. Some of the people of India want self-government. Importance of India to Britain as a customer. Other Asiatic possessions.
- (d) *In Africa:* Geographic and climatic features which account for the former term "Dark Continent" (unknown); Livingstone, Stanley, Mungo Park, etc. Dutch and British in Union of South Africa (settlement, surface, climate, resources). Cecil Rhodes, Botha, Smuts; acquisition and value of British Equatorial Africa. Other European powers share in division of Africa, especially France, Germany, Italy, Portugal and Spain, and Belgium; why European nations want colonies in Africa.
- (e) *In Australia and New Zealand:* Discovery of Australia by Tasman, Dampier and Cook; the settlement of the eastern coastal plains. Extent, surface and drainage; exploration of interior. Climate and agricultural industries. Gold and other mineral wealth. Industries and industrial and commercial centres. Discovery of New Zealand; the Maoris; extent, surface, and climate. Natural resources; commercial centres. Pacific Islands as bases for air ports and cable stations.

Time: 40 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A knowledge of the more important geographical features of each of Britain's more important overseas possessions.
2. A knowledge of the main geographical features of Africa. (This is the first time Africa has been studied in this series.)
3. An appreciation of the interdependence linking Britain and her overseas possessions.
4. A knowledge of the location of the more important industrial centres of the overseas possessions of Britain.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested by the outline.
2. Develop animated maps illustrating the industries and products of the more important possessions.
3. Prepare a series of maps showing Africa at different stages in the "partition."

4. Collect pictures and make drawings depicting the social life of the people of India and Africa.
5. Open-forum:
 1. Is Britain in a position to defend Australia and New Zealand against Japanese aggression?
 2. Is European exploitation being welcomed by the "backward" peoples of the world?
 3. Are the smaller British possessions (especially the Australian islands) worth the trouble and expense of retaining them as British possessions?

CORRELATIONS:

Dramatics: Dramatizations based on lives of Clive, Livingstone, Rhodes, Cook, etc.

Art: Examine pictures of art and architecture of India.

Science: What is science doing to improve living conditions in India, Africa, Australia?

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Problem IV.—How the Development of the United States has Influenced the Development of Canada.

In Section A the story of the settlement of the Atlantic seaboard was developed; the American Revolutionary War and the migration of the Loyalists was considered. Here we pick up the story of the subsequent development of this other English speaking nation.

Picture the tide of American settlement flowing westward, the flood of European immigrants providing cheap labor and the consequent industrial development of the North-Eastern States as the western market developed.

- (a) *The agricultural South vs. the industrial North* (this section is a brief review of Section A, Problem 2 (3) to preserve the continuity): The geographical features of the Atlantic seaboard. Life on a southern plantation prior to the Civil War; slavery, climate of the South and its resources and industries. Life in New England in same period; farmers, traders, fishermen. Climate and resources of New England.
- (b) *The opening of the West* (a brief sketch only): The land beyond the Appalachians, its surface and drainage; frontier life. Purchase of Louisiana from France; California secured from Spain; Lewis and Clarke expedition; gold in California; the covered wagon days; the continent spanned; the map fills in. Influence of the gold rush in California on British Columbia. Peaceful settlement of Oregon—British Columbia boundary dispute typical of how Canada and the United States settle all their differences. (Do not study all the boundary disputes and agreements.)
- (c) *New methods and new machinery transform the West:* The West of the ranching days (cattle). Homestead Act of 1862; rapid growth of settlement after Civil War. New Farming methods follow on the development of such

improved machinery as Deere's plow, seed drill, McCormick's reaper, threshing machine, etc. Productivity of the western farm lands attracts European settlers and provides a market for eastern industrial states. Canadian farmers adopt American farming methods. Rapid development of Canadian West after end of homesteading in United States. Struggle of American farmers against monopoly control by transportation companies. Modern problem of erosion and floods; drought and soil drifting (as in Western Canada).

- (d) *Industrialization of North-East and Central States*: Natural resources of this region (coal, iron, water powers, etc.). The textile industry of the New England States. New inventions which accelerate industrialization of this area, e.g., improved methods of producing steel, the cotton gin, the sewing machine, vulcanization of rubber, conversion of water power into electrical power, the internal combustion engine; development of railways opens up resources of West and creates markets. Development of large scale production of standardized goods. New industrial centres. Spread of American industrial methods and branch factories into Eastern Canada to escape tariff (National Policy of Sir John A. Macdonald). Rapid development of Canadian West after end of homesteading in United States. Trade between Canada and the United States in raw materials and finished products; the trade agreement of 1936 (briefly).
- (e) If time permits, have committee surveys along similar lines made of Mexico, the West Indies, British Guiana, and the A.B.C. countries of South America. Time: 35 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A general knowledge of the natural features of the United States, more particularly of the portions nearest Canada.
2. An appreciation of how the social and industrial development of the United States is affecting Canada.
3. An appreciation of the vital importance to Canada and the United States of cheap transportation facilities.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Discussion of pupil reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Development of appropriate animated maps on which will be located primary products and industrial areas.
3. Pictures of new farm machinery developed to open up Canadian and American West.
4. Open-forum:
 - (1) Should Canada have offered special inducements to young Canadians to attract them to the West when they began to go to the North Eastern States in large numbers?
 - (2) Would Canada be better off today if there had been no tariff barrier to trade between Canada and the United States during the last fifty years?
 - (3) Will the development of the St. Lawrence seaway to allow ocean steamers to come directly to Fort William, Duluth and Chicago be beneficial or harmful to Canada?

CORRELATIONS:

Science: How the application of scientific knowledge has developed the natural resources of Canada and the United States.

Mathematics: Development of appropriate statistical graphs.

Dramatics: Development of dramatizations based on pioneer days.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

Our Country Past and Present—Nida and Webb.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Rich Land, Poor Land—Stuart Chase. (For teachers.)

Problem V.—Growth of World Industrial Competition.

Industrialism meant that there was a much greater output of goods to sell. Therefore there was a need for (1) raw materials, and (2) markets. As the available areas from which raw materials could be easily and cheaply obtained became fewer, the rivalry between nations for these areas (colonies) became more intense; the same areas were also markets for finished products. An excellent example of this rivalry is seen in the partition of Africa among the European powers (see Problem III).

- (a) Brief review of Britain's industrial leadership to preserve continuity.
- (b) *Influence of Industrial Revolution on Germany:* See Section A for early history; Germany a late starter in the industrial and colonial race due to lack of unity until after 1870; favourable location for European trade; deposits of coal and iron; development of scientific knowledge and invention; rapid industrial development; only available colonial areas left were in Africa and China; trade rivalry with Britain; stress laid on the development of a large army and navy to protect her interests at home and abroad.
- (c) *Influence of Industrial Revolution on Japan:* See Section A for early history; reluctant acceptance of western industrial methods; rapid progress due to location near important seaports (markets) of Eastern Asia; resources of coal, oil, and water power; iron in China and Korea; seizure of Korea and other parts of China; leadership in silk and other textile industries owing to low cost of production; standard of living, trade rivalry with Britain and other industrial nations; stress laid on the development of a large army and navy to protect her interests at home and abroad.
- (d) *Influence of Industrial Revolution on France:* See Section A for early history. As France became industrialized new materials and markets were needed; colonies in Northern Africa and Far East; development of army and navy to protect her interests at home and abroad.
- (e) *Colonial and Commercial Rivalry cause a World War:* Growth of fear, jealousy and suspicion among leading industrial nations; secret alliances; armaments race; growth in popular demand for permanent peace; the immediate causes of World War; sketch of main events; crushing of first German drive on Paris gave Allies time to mobilize resources of man and industrial power which were immensely greater than those available to central powers; world wide nature of struggle; privations of non-combatants; part played by

Canada and other parts of Empire; sea power; revolution in Russia; Peace of Versailles; gain and loss.

Time: 25 class periods and 2 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An appreciation of the effect of the Industrial Revolution on the great world powers.
2. An appreciation of the apparent need of colonies and raw materials.
3. An appreciation of the influence of commercial rivalry and national hatreds (which were not permitted to slumber) in bringing on World War.
4. A knowledge of some of the main events of the World War and of the part Canada played in the struggle.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Discussion of reports prepared by pupils.
2. Draw maps of pre-war and post-war Europe.
3. By means of a map show that the Central Powers, after September, 1914, were in the position of a besieged fortress cut off from outside resources.
4. Open-forum:
 - (1) Was Germany entirely responsible for starting the World War?
 - (2) Did the Treaty of Versailles readjust the boundaries of Europe in a satisfactory manner?

CORRELATIONS:

Science: How science influenced the course of the Great War.

Language: Oral and written reports.

Mathematics: Graphical representations of men, power, etc.

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Changing Governments and Changing Cultures—Rugg.

Problem VI.—Canada and Commonwealth Trade.

Canada is a leading member of the British Commonwealth of Nations. This association brings certain benefits, chiefly in the form of trade and, to some extent, protection. On the other hand, membership implies certain responsibilities.

- (a) *Varied and extensive resources of the Commonwealth:* The important primary products of each of the main political divisions. Extent to which Commonwealth is self-dependent as regards foods products and raw industrial materials.
- (b) *Interdependence as regards trade:* The highly industrialized areas and the primary producing areas; trade advantages and disadvantages as between various units of Commonwealth; the Ottawa Trade Agreements (general principles only; omit all but most essential details as minor details will change with frequent revisions).

- (c) *Trade routes and communication facilities:* The important trade routes of the world; the important present and prospective air routes; communication by cable and radio; importance of some of the smaller possessions along the trade, air and communication routes. Empire defence and the problem of the control of trade and communication routes under modern conditions; world peace essential to security and prosperity of Commonwealth.

Time: 20 class periods and 2 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A knowledge of the location of the main producing areas of certain essential primary products.
2. An appreciation of the interdependence of the units of the Empire.
3. An appreciation of the important place Canada occupies in Empire trade.
4. A knowledge of the location of the main trade routes of the Empire.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Develop appropriate products and trade maps.
3. On the globe locate the key points for inter-Empire air routes.
4. Open-forum:
 - (1) Is world peace essential for the security and prosperity of the Empire?
 - (2) The British Empire is the greatest and most varied storehouse of raw materials in the world. Is there any connection between this fact and the trouble and unrest in the world today?
5. Develop some appropriate cartoons.

CORRELATIONS:

Mathematics: Develop trade graphs of various types.

Language: Oral and written reports.

Science: How is science influencing the development of inter-Empire trade?

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Problem VII.—Our Own Province.

After a world tour to survey the Empire, we are back in Alberta. Just what has Alberta to contribute to the wealth and development of the Empire?

- (a) *Natural resources of Alberta:* Production of those natural products distinctive of Alberta; how such are utilized and where.
- (b) *Industries of Alberta:* Extent to which Alberta's natural products are industrializing Alberta; future possibilities.
- (c) *Interdependence of Alberta with other Provinces:* Extent to which Alberta is dependent on other Provinces for a market and as a source of raw materials; economic imperialism exhibited in relations of Western to Eastern Canada.
- (d) *Government of Alberta:* Distinctive features of the Provincial System of Government.. (Avoid detail on functions of each department.)

Time: 20 class periods and 2 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A review of the natural resources and industries of Alberta.
2. An appreciation of the interdependence of Alberta and the other Canadian provinces.
3. A knowledge of the distinctive features of the government of Alberta, legislative powers of the Province; important sources of revenue, chief expenditures.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Collect pictures of Alberta's resources and industries.
3. Make collections of natural resources of the community.
4. Load freight trains for round-trips to Ontario.
5. Ship carloads of Alberta wheat to Europe by different routes.
6. Open-forum: Should Alberta develop its local industries so as to become independent economically of other provinces of Canada?
7. Develop appropriate cartoons.

CORRELATIONS:

Mathematics: Develop graphs of various types.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

Our Empire and Its Neighbors—McDougall and Paterson.

A World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

A Reader in Canadian Civics—Wallace.

SECTION C: THE WORLD OF TODAY—GRADE IX

Problem I.—Introductory: How the Environment Affects Living.

This topic is to be developed as a preview of the work for the year. Intensive teaching of the suggested content, item by item, is not to be attempted. The sub-topics indicate how the theme may profitably be developed. The purpose is to stimulate discussion by the pupils, and to open up problems that will be treated more elaborately as the course develops.

- (a) *Influence of Economic Factors:* Influence of the natural resources, climate, transportation facilities, location, etc., on the occupations of people, e.g., in the local community, in the Province and Dominion, in selected areas of the world at large.
- (b) *Influence of Geographic Factors:* Survey of world geography; land and water masses; typical surface features of each of the continents. Distribution of world population; reasons for congestion in three areas.
- (c) *Influence of Social Factors:* Importance of a high standard of living; varying standards in world; relationship of density of population and resources; to standard of living; problems arising from congested population; dangers of international conflict; emigration a former remedy; scientific development of formerly useless areas a present remedy.
- (d) *Influence of the Machinery of Control:* Why and how the government must regulate living; contrasting forms of government in Canada, municipal, pro-

vincial and federal; contrasting types among the great nations, e.g., France a Republic, etc. (Avoid details, but do try to have pupils understand that each nation must work out a form of government which is most suited to its ideas and ideals.)

Time: 12 class periods and 3 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. A knowledge of the location of the more important industrial nations and of the minerals and other raw materials upon which they are dependent.
2. A review of the main geographical features of the continental masses.
3. An appreciation of the effect of man's physical environment on his social development and organization.
4. An appreciation of man's ability to solve his problems when he assembles his intellectual and material resources for the purpose.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Present reports and illustrative material on the topics suggested in the outline.
2. Prepare a homolosine projection map showing the distribution of the peoples of the world.
3. Class discussion on the extent to which vast areas in Africa and South America could be made suitable for habitation by Europeans, were one year's expenditure on armaments devoted to such a purpose.
4. Open-forum: "Light not heat the governing principle in all discussions"; How to conduct a public meeting, duties of various officers; How to draw up a Constitution for a Social Studies Society; Is over-population a menace to World Peace?
5. Collect and develop cartoons suggested by the outline.

CORRELATIONS:

Science: How science is aiding man to utilize the waste and inhospitable regions of the world.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

World Geography for Canadian Schools—Denton and Lord.

Manual in Geography I—Hilton.

A Reader in Canadian Civics—Wallace.

Problem II.—How Industrialism is Revolutionizing Home and Community Life.

In this section the attentions of the pupils should be directed to the ever-changing environment in which they live, and to the forces that effect change. Because of a few recent inventions, the child's social environment of today is very different from the social environment of his parents when they were children. Marked as the improvement in the general conditions of living has been, conditions still exist in rural and urban communities that challenge the intelligence and good-will of present and future citizens.

NOTE.—There should be a definite correlation with General Science and with Health Education at this point. For the purpose of Social Studies not much detail

is required. More may be introduced in the Science or Health class. The important requirement here is that pupils appreciate the fact that the community has organized itself to provide efficiently certain essential services. The Health elements of sub-section (c) may be grouped under one heading: Responsibility assumed by the government for the health of the community. Then any necessary *detail* may be taken in the Health periods.

- (a) *Living Conditions in Rural Areas* (Pupil investigation): Rural homes as they are; rural homes as they should be; water supply and sanitation (briefly); labour-saving equipment in the rural home—sewing machine, cream separator, washing machine, etc. Labour-saving machinery on the farm. Importance of electrical power in rural areas; why electrical power is not available in a province having extensive power resources. Community social services. Hospitals and clinics (briefly); education; recreation; libraries; the church. Community government (a review, see Section A). The breaking down of rural isolation by the automobile, newspaper, telephone, radio, rural mail delivery and improved roads; possibility of making rural life even more attractive (Class discussion).
- (b) *Living Conditions in Large Centres of Population* (Pupil investigation): Types and qualities of homes (individual houses, apartments, slums); provision of modern conveniences in homes; improvement of housing (new materials used; scientific planning; insulation; heating; air-conditioning; lighting; decoration; furnishings); improvement of outside surroundings. City planning. General effects of living conditions in family life (Class discussion).
- (c) *Social Services Reach Highest Point in Cities* (Pupil investigation): Police and fire protection; streets; public utilities—water, light, gas, power, transportation, telephones; the ownership of these utilities. Sanitation, including disposal of garbage and sewage, inspection of stores, food, milk, water, etc. Health services—the Public Health Board; the Public Health Clinic and its value to the community; hospitals, how controlled and financed and their value to the community. Pure food legislation; adulteration of food and drugs, misleading advertising. Education; libraries; recreation; voluntary service organizations; the church; community government (review: see Section A).
- (d) *Rural and Urban Problems* (Class discussion led by teacher): Over-expenditure and over-capitalization during the land and production boom of the war and post-war years; high pressure salesmanship of machinery and live stock; instalment buying; collapse of prices in 1929-30; mortgages and interest rates; local taxation; development of co-operative purchasing and marketing, e.g., the Wheat Pool.

Time: 20 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An appreciation by urban children of rural home and community life, and by rural children of urban home and community life.
2. An appreciation of the part played by the automobile, the telephone, the radio, and the press, in developing a superior type of rural and urban culture.
3. An appreciation of the fact that there are conditions in both rural and urban life which present a challenge to the citizens of today.
4. A knowledge of how the community guards the health of its citizens.
5. A knowledge of how the community is governed.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Representation by pictures of changes in rural and urban homes due to modern inventions.
3. Development of appropriate cartoons.
4. Drafting of plans for the "ideal" kitchen, etc.
5. Planning of grounds about a home.
6. Prepare a play demonstrating the isolation of the pioneer home in time of illness.
7. Open-forum: (1) Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of buying on the instalment plan. (2) When prosperity returns to our farms and cities what precautions should we take to prevent a repetition of the extravagance of the boom years before the depression? (3) Should street railways be publicly or privately owned?
8. Reports on the contributions to human welfare made by such leaders as Jenner, Pasteur, Lister, Simpson, Curie, Florence Nightingale, Reid and Banting.

CORRELATIONS:

Health: The sections of this problem dealing with health may be discussed during the Health Education periods.

Art: Parts of sections (a) and (b) belong as much to Art as Social Studies.

Dramatics: The play suggested in the "activities" above may be worked out during the Dramatics periods.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

A Reader in Canadian Civics—Wallace.

Makers of the Modern World—Searle.

Tides in the West—Alberta Wheat Pool.

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Problem III.—How Modern Industrialized Nations Produce and Distribute Goods.

The previous Problem furnishes a picture of how people live in Canada. Here we examine how they work. Due caution must be exercised by teachers that the material of this Problem is presented in its simplest form, in local settings whenever possible. For example, the corporation may be illustrated by some local co-operative endeavor where many people subscribe small sums of money to initiate some rather ambitious undertaking; the "modern trend toward fewer and larger corporations" is exemplified by the tendency in many communities for the independent grocers to amalgamate into local "chains" as a measure of protection against the more powerful national "chains".

If the whole class is taking Junior Business it is suggested that this Problem may be quite properly dealt with there, providing due emphasis is placed on the social implications of procedures and practices employed in modern business.

- (a) *Buying and Selling* (Class discussion led by teacher): Importance of buying and selling (exchanging goods and services) with the disappearance of the

self-contained homes and communities of our grandparents; barter the first and simplest form of exchange; earliest forms of money (standard of exchange), e.g., beaver skins, tobacco, etc.; introduction of metal coinage; banks as places in which to deposit money and in which to obtain credit; paper currency as a substitute for gold.

- (b) *Production of Goods* (Pupil investigation): Select some typical raw materials and trace them through the various processes employed in converting them into saleable articles, e.g., sources of raw material, transformation in a factory, distribution through a wholesaler and retailer, part played by transportation in the process; the price paid by the consumer; how the consumer's purchase price is distributed over the production of the raw material, the manufacturing process, transportation; production for profit vs. production for use under the guidance of a "planned economy" in an endeavor to prevent seasonal unemployment and depressions, i.e., if all industries were operated for the benefit of the people as a whole, would it be possible to prevent unemployment, booms and depressions? (Discussion.)
- (c) *Large Business and Industrial Organizations* (Class discussion); Production of goods in sufficient quantity for modern needs require the use of expensive machinery and factories; the corporation as a means of amassing capital from many sources for large-scale production; a simple illustration of how a small business might grow into a corporation; vast resources and far-flung interests of many large corporations; influence of powerful corporations (industrial and financial) on the social, industrial and political life of the community and nation; modern trend toward fewer and larger corporations, e.g., corner groceries form local chain stores; active interference of government to supervise the methods and practices employed in modern business, e.g., half-holiday by-laws, early closing regulations, fair wage laws; the Stevens Price Spread Commission's Investigation; codes as an attempt by business to regulate its own affairs under government control and supervision.
- (d) *International Trade* (Teach): Its importance to all modern nations; the long controversy over "free trade" and "protection"; a brief history of this controversy in Britain, Canada, and the United States.

NOTE.—The teacher should guard against spending too much time on this rather difficult topic. A brief treatment will show that nations desire to trade more freely when a mutually satisfactory basis can be arranged. If time permits, the following sub-sections may be attempted:

- (1) *In Britain*: Britain's industrial development handicapped by tariffs designed to benefit farmers; the Anti-Corn Law League; the Irish famine; Peel and the Repeal of the Corn Laws; Free Trade; Britain the leading industrial nation until the World War; disruption of trade and loss of markets, owing to tariff barriers erected by other countries; a policy of protection adopted; the Ottawa Trade Agreements to stimulate inter-Empire trade.
- (2) *In Canada*: The Elgin agreement of 1854 with the United States; the National Policy of Sir John A. Macdonald; the British Preferential Tariffs; the proposed reciprocity agreement of 1911 with the United States; disruption of post-war trade, owing to tariff barriers erected by other countries; the Ottawa Trade Agreements; the reciprocity arrangement with the United

States, 1936; most-favored-nation agreements with France and other countries. (Omit the details of these trade agreements.)

- (3) *In Other Countries:* The United States and all European countries erected tariff walls that grew higher and higher, especially during the post-war years, in an effort to check the flood of British machine-made goods which were disrupting home industry where machine manufacture had not been extensively introduced; good and ill-effects of the prevailing policies of protection.

Time: 20 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. Some appreciation of the part played in community life by such business organizations as the corner grocery, the department store, the general store, the creamery, the co-operative.
2. A general knowledge of the present attitude of Britain, Canada, and the United States towards "free trade" and "protection".

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested by the outline.
2. Preparation of a set of pictures showing how trading methods have developed from barter to money.
3. Committee study of the procedure involved in simple banking operations. Report may be in the form of a dramatization in which pupils learn how to deposit and withdraw money, etc.
4. Pupils report to class on the operations involved in the production of common commercial articles, e.g., tires, books, cotton, broadcloth.
5. Debate: *Resolved*, that the trader is more important to the modern world than the farmer.
6. The competitive system argues against government interference in business. Is this consistent with a policy of protective tariffs?
7. Open-forum:
 - (1) Should chain stores be forbidden to compete against small individual stores?
 - (2) Is it necessary for the government to make laws regulating business and industrial methods?

CORRELATIONS:

Junior Business: The sections dealing with Buying and Selling, Production of Goods, and Large Business and Industrial Organizations, may be correlated with Junior Business.

Art: Cartoons and drawings constitute a project for the Art class.

Mathematics: Several of the topics will suggest graphs and statistical material for the Mathematics class.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

Our World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Problem IV.—How Science Affects Living.

This Problem is closely related to the two preceding Problems. It aims to give pupils a picture of the revolutionary effects of applying new scientific discoveries to aid in the complex problem of living. The class may work in committees and each committee develop its own report and lead in the discussion of the report. Such discussion should indicate clearly the social influence of each invention or discovery.

- (a) *Science in Industry* (Pupil investigation): Story of the Industrial Revolution. Improved methods of producing steel; development of the steam engine, locomotive and steamship (review); development of the internal combustion engine, the automobile and aeroplane. Application of electricity in industrial and social life. Creation of new modes of communication, e.g., telegraph and cable, telephone, wireless, radio, television, wireless transmission of pictures. Perfection of the rotary press and movie camera. Development of the semi-automatic factory.

NOTE.—In this Problem the important feature is that children appreciate how certain important scientific discoveries and inventions are revolutionizing social and industrial life. The Problem distinctly does not require any study of the technical details of each discovery and invention. For example, any child can appreciate the tremendous social importance of the internal combustion engine (the gasoline engine), without knowing much about its construction or operation. In making their reports, however, pupils will want to demonstrate their knowledge of radio, or aeroplanes, or the movie camera. By all means let such pupils report as exhaustively as time will permit. The making of such a report will be of great value to them as individuals.

Problems that may arise for discussion:

1. Should modern labor-displacing machinery be replaced by machinery that is less automatic?
 2. Do the movies, the press and the radio influence public opinion (propaganda)? Should these powerful agencies be controlled by the government?
 3. Should power sites be publicly or privately controlled?
 4. Is society obtaining the full value of new inventions as they are perfected?
 5. What is being done by the government to stimulate research and discovery? What is being done by private interests?
- (b) *The Economic and Social Effects of the Application of Science to Industry* (Class discussion led by teacher): Factory slavery as the product of the first phase of the Industrial Revolution; improvements effected by such reformers as Place, Owen, Shaftesbury. Labor Unions and their struggle for recognition in England; strikes and lockouts and their economic and social effects; government intervention to lessen evils of strife between capital and labor, e.g., conciliation boards. Improved factory legislation; regulation of working hours; minimum wage laws; workmen's compensation Acts; unemployment insurance instead of "relief". Employee participation in the ownership of industry; profit sharing. Improved housing conditions for industrial workers; education for an increased leisure.

NOTE.—The teacher should not require the pupils to “learn” the details of this section.

- (c) *Science makes available Greater and More Varied Supplies of Food* (Pupil investigation): The interdependence of industrial and agricultural nations; the important foodstuffs—wheat, meat, fish, fruit, vegetables from the temperate lands; and fruit, vegetables, sugar, coffee, tea from the tropical and sub-tropical lands. The climatic and soil requirements necessary for the successful production of such foodstuffs. Labor and transportation requirements for successful growth and marketing. The agrarian revolution. Work of Burbank, Saunders and others in the improvement of plants and animals and in the control of diseases. Use of natural and artificial fertilizers to increase production. Improved transportation facilities open up new markets (e.g., refrigeration opened the markets of the northern hemisphere to Australia and the Argentine). Packing plants; canning of fish, meat and fruit. Faulty distribution of food supplies of the world causes the anomaly of a food surplus in Canada with a famine in China. (Discussion.)
- (d) *Science Influences Our Clothing* (Pupil investigation): Clothing now a product of the factory; less clothing being worn, especially by office workers. Chief countries producing cotton, wool, silk, and flax; producing and manufacturing processes; labor conditions. Important industrial centres in the chief producing countries. Rayon an important substitute, especially in Eastern Canada; how rayon is produced.

Time: 25 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An appreciation of the social implications of the new discoveries and inventions.
2. A knowledge of how these discoveries and inventions influence industry.
3. An appreciation of the improvement that the workers of the world have effected in their working conditions largely through their own efforts.
4. An appreciation of the importance of developing a defence against propaganda.
5. An appreciation of the fact that men of all races and nationalities contribute to the solution of pressing problems in the field of industry in order that goods may be produced more efficiently and profitably. Cannot the solution of urgent social and economic problems be attempted by means of the same kind of co-operation?

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil and committee reports.
2. Drawings representing the older methods of travel; of communication, etc.
3. The old and the new in manufacturing, illustrated by pictures and models.
4. Collect pictures contrasting working conditions in early and modern factories.
5. Collecting and making cartoons related to the Problem.
6. The evolution of home lighting; a demonstration.
7. Reports on the lives of such leaders as Davy, Faraday, Goodyear, Bell, Morse, Edison, Steinmetz, etc.
8. A visit to a factory.
9. A visit to a newspaper plant or a broadcasting station.
10. Open-forum: Is the prevalence of dire distress and unemployment necessary, when capital, raw materials and markets are available?

CORRELATIONS:

Dramatics: The life of one of the inventors may be dramatized.

Art: The evolution of home lighting lends itself to the making of a frieze as an Art project.

Language: Oral and written reports.

Science: It is all science.

REFERENCES:

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

Makers of the Modern World—Searle.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

A Manual in Geography I—Hilton.

Problem V.—How Britain and Canada Have Developed a System of Democratic Government.

This study is almost entirely historical; and for this reason the teacher should take pains to see that the "history" does not conceal from the pupil the fact that the "Parliamentary system of government" is not merely "history," in the sense of belonging to the past, but is a present and functioning reality. In other words, the pupil must not become so much absorbed in accumulating facts that he fails to appreciate the "hereness" and "nowness" of one of our most important social institutions. Here the teacher should not hesitate to do some direct teaching, leaving to the pupils the development of subsidiary themes through assigned readings.

- (a) *The development of the British System of Parliamentary Government: How Parliamentary government works* (illustrate by reference to present Canadian and British systems); how the party system developed in Britain; how the Prime Minister and Cabinet are selected and how the Cabinet system developed; attempt by George III to recover lost power of King; the resumption of democratic control under William Pitt.
- (b) *The Control of Parliament Wrested from the Hands of the Privileged Classes* (1832-1929): The election system prior to 1832; the struggle against the landowners for the First Reform Bill; the workers fail to secure the acceptance of the People's Charter, but gain their end in the Second and Third Reform Bills; power of the House of Lords limited by the Parliament Act, 1911; woman suffrage movement, 1918 and 1929; the development of a third political party—the Labour or Socialist; growth and influence of the Labour Party, especially since 1918.
- (c) *Canada Secures Democratic Government:* Britain hesitates to grant self-government to a colony having a dual nationality; control of the government by a privileged class; protests of the Reformers; Lord Durham's investigation and report; triumph of responsible government.

(In this topic, avoid an elaborate discussion of the Quebec and Constitutional Acts, and omit all tiresome details of the negotiations between the Reform leaders and the British Government. The names of Mackenzie, Baldwin, Papineau, Howe, Durham and Elgin should have some significance when the section is completed.)

- (d) *Canada Becomes a Nation*: Canada to become a nation or to remain a group of colonies; the trade depression and the danger of war with the United States as arguments for a union; influence of Macdonald, Brown, Tupper and other "Fathers of Confederation"; the B.N.A. Act and the main features of the Canadian Federal System—(1) organization of federal government; (2) division of powers between federal and provincial authority; (3) taxation; (4) expenditure; (5) law enforcement; review briefly the expansion of Canada in territory and population after the West was opened by the railways; Canada at the Imperial Conferences; her expanding trade and participation in the World War secure her autonomy by the Statute of Westminster, 1931.

Time: 34 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An elementary understanding of how the British system of parliamentary government functions in Britain and Canada.
2. A knowledge of how the people of Britain and of Canada gradually secured democratic control of their governments.
3. A knowledge of how Canada developed from a group of colonies into a nation.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Pupil reports on topics suggested by the outline.
2. Dramatizations based on the lives of Mackenzie, Howe, Macdonald, etc.
3. If convenient, attend a session of the Provincial Legislature, or if this be not possible, organize the open-forum for several periods as a miniature legislature.
4. Make cartoons illustrating dramatic incidents suggested by the outline.
5. Prepare a chart showing the organization of the federal system of government.
6. Open-forum discussions: Is an educated body of voters necessary for modern democratic government? Should our government be in the hands of a group of specialists rather than under the control of the representatives of the people? Do "organizations" influence the decisions of the government?
7. Conduct several class discussions under the rules of parliamentary procedure.

CORRELATIONS:

Dramatics: The dramatizations suggested above may be prepared by the Dramatics class.

Language: Oral and written reports.

REFERENCES:

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

The Story of Britain and Canada—Paterson.

Changing Governments and Changing Cultures—Rugg.

Problem VI.—How Certain World Powers are Dealing with their Post-war Problems.

All modern nations are meeting with new and baffling problems, and are finding great difficulty in effecting a reasonable readjustment of their social and economic systems to a rapidly changing civilization. Many interesting experiments designed to improve the existing order of things are being tried in different parts of the world. Can we attempt an unprejudiced evaluation of these experiments?

In this Problem the pupil will have the valuable experience of checking up his earlier observations on some important world problems. He may need to do some radical revising of his previous opinions.

1. *Three Nations which lack Raw Materials and Markets.*

(Refer to Problem IV, Section A; and Problem V, Section B.)

- (a) GERMANY: Her losses in men, wealth and territory during the World War; the formation of the German Republic; economic collapse following the Treaty of Versailles; failure of the Republic to effect a reconstruction of Germany; rise of Hitler and the Nazis; suppression of all opposition groups; rearming of Germany; reoccupation of the Rhineland; position of Germany with regard to colonies, raw materials and markets (Problem IV, (c), (d)).
- (b) ITALY: Her losses in the World War, and relatively small gains; post-war collapse; Mussolini and Fascism; suppression of all opposition; position of Italy with regard to colonies, raw materials and markets (Problem IV, (c), (d)); Ethiopia and the League of Nations.
- (c) JAPAN: The Japanese slogan, "Asia for the Asiatics"; industrial development of Japan during and since the World War and her encroachments on British and American markets, especially in the Far East; position of Japan with regard to colonies, raw materials, and markets (Problem IV, (c), (d)); seizure of Manchukuo; relations with League of Nations and with China, Russia and United States.

2. *Two Nations which are maintaining Parliamentary Government.*

- (a) BRITAIN (Refer to Problem V): Her Parliamentary system adaptable to modern needs in government; her post-war unemployment problem; loss of markets due to tariff barriers erected by other nations; policy of protection adopted; Ottawa Trade Agreements, an effort to make the British Commonwealth a self-contained economic unit; her responsibilities to the League of Nations and to the Commonwealth.
- (b) FRANCE (Refer to Problem II, Section A; and Problem V, Section B): With Britain upholds parliamentary government in Europe; problem of many political parties; her fear of and opposition to Germany; friendship with Britain and Russia; relations with League of Nations.

3. *Two Nations which are experimenting in Social and Economic Reform.*

- (a) RUSSIA (Refer to Problem IV, Section A): The Revolution; the triumph of the Bolsheviks; Lenin and Stalin plan, attempt social and economic reconstruction by "Five-Year Plans"; extent of their success; relations with neighbouring countries and with League of Nations.
- (b) UNITED STATES (Refer to Problem IV, Section B): Economic development—farm and factory—during the World War; vast sums of money borrowed by Europe from the United States during the World War; and the post-war period; effect of tariffs on war-debt payments; effect of dwindling foreign trade on employment; economic collapse 1929; the New Deal planned to restore purchasing power of the farmer and the factory worker; direction and control of economic reconstruction by the government; international affairs and the League of Nations; the Kellogg Peace Pacts.

4. *Canada and Its Problems.*

The war and post-war booms and price inflations; the effect of tariffs on reparations and war-debt payments; unemployment and economic distress; the unemployed youth of the land; efforts of the governments to improve conditions; the Progressives; the U.F.A.; the rise of new political parties advocating economic changes, e.g., C.C.F., Communist and Social Credit; obligations to the Commonwealth and to the League of Nations.

Time: 25 class periods and 4 open-forum periods.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

1. An appreciation of the extent to which modern industrial nations in Europe and Asia require colonies, raw materials, and markets.
2. Knowledge of Canada's international trade, and an appreciation of the extent to which foreign markets for her farm products and raw materials are necessary.
3. An understanding of the importance of the social and economic experiments now being tried in different parts of the world.

SUGGESTED PUPIL ACTIVITIES:

1. Prepare reports on topics suggested in the outline.
2. Make maps to illustrate phases of the international situation, e.g., the Mediterranean area showing Italy and Ethiopia; Spain and Morocco.
3. Make maps showing relation of industrial minerals of Europe and Asia to Germany, Italy and Japan.
4. Collect newspaper clippings, magazine articles, cartoons and pictures, and classify them in a notebook.
5. Make a map showing the democracies and the dictatorships of the world. Why have dictatorships replaced democratic governments in several European countries?
6. Open-forum discussions: If democracy is "government of the people, for the people, by the people," has it ever been fully attained in any of the democratic states? Should the League of Nations have an international police force to enforce its decrees? Is it ever advisable for a government to suppress freedom of speech, of the press, and of assembly? If all the young men and women in Canada were assured that the government would grant them food, clothing and shelter for the rest of their lives, would any of them still want to earn their own living?

REFERENCES:

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.
Changing Governments and Changing Cultures—Rugg.
Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Problem VII.—What About the Future?

Despite the war clouds hanging over the world, influences are at work to create a spirit of universal brotherhood. These influences are all the more powerful because they are intangible and exert themselves on the "common people" of all nations, who have no desire for war. The pupils will be able to suggest many of these "war" and "peace" influences.

- (a) *World Wide Influences which are a Menace to Peace and Security:*
 1. Deeply rooted international hatreds and racial prejudices.
 2. Rivalry of industrial nations for raw materials and markets.
 3. Unstable dictatorships.
 4. Entrenched interests whose business depends on the maintenance of a feeling of insecurity, e.g., armament manufacturers.
 5. Rival social, political and economic ideals, e.g., Spain.
- (b) *The Preceding Factors are Menacing, but against them may be set New Trends and Developments which are Powerful Agencies for Peace:*
 1. Increased industrial interdependence of nations.
 2. Influence of the British Commonwealth and other democracies.
 3. The League of Nations; World Court; etc.
 4. The influence of books, newspapers, lectures, movies and radio, travel.
 5. Growth of opposition to "war-mongers" in all lands.

This constitutes a review of the more important "appreciation" phases of the work of the year. Some of the problems discussed at the opening of the term might be reopened for a discussion based on a broader knowledge and a more mature judgment. Impress on the pupils that they must be prepared to review and revise their opinions at all times in the light of new information and broader experience.

REFERENCES:

(As suggested for previous problems.)

The World of Today—McDougall and Paterson.

Changing Civilizations in the Modern World—Rugg.

Changing Governments and Changing Cultures—Rugg.

HEALTH AND PHYSICAL EDUCATION

The course in Health and Physical Education comprises (A) Health Education, and (B) Physical Education. The course in Health Education consists essentially of health instruction and information, training in health habits, and the development of a "health conscience." Physical Education is the active participation by students in various forms of physical training, either in a gymnasium or on the playground. The course in Health Education may take the place of Physical Education on the school programme when no gymnasium is available, or when the playground cannot be used. The total time required for this combined course is three periods a week in schools which devote five or more periods weekly to each of Mathematics, General Science, English, and Social Studies. Of these three periods, one should be given to Health Education and two to Physical Education; but the teacher is left free to vary this arrangement. For example, Physical Education may be stressed in the fall and spring, and Health Education in the winter months, in schools where there is no gymnasium. This flexibility makes possible the inclusion of Health and Physical Education as one of the compulsory courses, and justifies the requirement that it be given a definite place on the time-tables of all schools throughout the year.

The Physical Education Syllabus of the University of the State of New York contains the following illustration of the ways in which the two parts of this course are related:

HEALTH EDUCATION	PHYSICAL EDUCATION
A.—Health Protection— through Hygienic environment, Health examination, Disease control, Accident prevention, and Mental Hygiene. B.—Health Teaching: Development of health habits. Information concerning Safety, Sanitation, Nutrition, Physiology, and Social Hygiene.	1.—Social Efficiency, including Courage, Initiative, Perseverance, Self-control, Fair play, Sympathy, Co-operation, and Loyalty. 2.—Culture: Appreciation of Physical laws, Human nature, Achievement, Rhythm, and Music.
C or 3.—Health Development— through large-muscle activities, producing Organic growth, Vitalities, and Skills.	

The attempt has been made to follow this division and to recognize the close relation between Health Education and Physical Education.

It would appear that an additional objective contributing both to the health and social efficiency of the individual would be the development of such proficiency in games as will lead to the continued participation in these by the boys and girls long after they have left school.

A.—HEALTH EDUCATION

INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

"If the school is to make any genuine and adequate contribution to the furtherance of health, it must set up *three objectives*; it must provide for the formation of *health habits*, the imparting of *health information*, and the development of a *health conscience*. The first of these is fundamental to the other two, for habits are the foundation on which the superstructure of life is erected."

"Habits, however, are not enough. They must be raised to the level of consciousness and made meaningful. The facts which lie back of them must be grasped; the basic principles must be understood. The individual must be informed and intelligent."

"Through definite instruction those superstitions regarding health and disease which have come down to us from a pre-scientific age, and which grow luxuriantly in almost every stratum of the population, must be eradicated."

"But habits and information, however valuable they may be, are not sufficient to the task. The school must imbue its pupils with a profound concern for the promotion of their own health and that of the community, and must inculcate an

earnest desire to eliminate disease and defect and privation from the life of men. The individual must be given a *health conscience*: he must be made to display a will to health; he must be encouraged to develop a moving sentiment for health."

"The development of a positive attitude towards health is possible only under the guidance of teachers who themselves possess it in full measure, who appreciate the significance of their work, and who grasp the meaning of the struggle of the race for a more abundant physical life. Under such instruction our children must enter imaginatively into this age-long struggle of mankind, and "thereby come to appreciate for themselves the worth of this portion of the human heritage. As in the past they have lived with the heroes of war and politics and finance, so in the future they must be made to live with those heroes who, despite discouragement and the bitterest opposition, have fought for the race the battles of medicine."

"A more healthful world is possible; but, if the school is to have any large share in giving it birth, it must establish contacts with the world of the present and contribute to the making of those changes which bring into being the world of the future."—Adapted from "Principles of Education," by Chapman and Counts.

* * * *

This outline will appear to be rather heavily weighted on the side of *information*. *Habit attainments*, however, and *pupil activities* will be the most important concern of the teacher. The following general suggestions are offered:

1. Refer to the outline for Health and Physical Education in the new "Programme for the Elementary School," noting the pupil activities there suggested.

2. In order to avoid too much "teaching" of Health, assign projects and surveys to the class, and to individual pupils. Let the health programme of the school reach out into the community. Have *surveys* made of the health habits of the community; of the facilities for public health; of the "danger spots"; of the methods of preparing food in the community, and of the menus commonly used; of the extent to which patent medicines are used; of the facilities for physical recreation; etc. Assign *projects* in school hygiene and community hygiene.

3. Correlate Health Education (especially the unit on "Community Health") with General Science, with Social Studies, and with Household Economics.

Much of the informational material in the outline will come up for discussion in General Science. There is no reason why instruction in health should be reserved for the Health Education periods. If this correlation procedure is adopted, and a number of projects are assigned to the pupils, it should be possible for the teacher to cover the course in one period a week.

NOTE RE TEXTBOOKS.

No textbook has been authorized for the use of pupils in Grades VII, VIII or IX.

At least two of the reference books listed for pupils together with one of those listed for the teacher are required in every classroom.

A TWO-YEAR CYCLE FOR GRADES VII AND VIII.

In ungraded schools, or in schools where Grades VII and VIII can be combined, the outline for Grade VII may be used with the combined Grades during the year 1937-38, and each alternate year thereafter. The outline for Grade VIII will then be used during the year 1938-39, and each alternate year thereafter.

GRADES VII AND VIII

Health teaching in Division I and II (Grades I to VI) has been focussed on the development of good health practices. Emphasis has been placed on the establishment of correct health habits with little formal instruction on the physiological or hygienic reasons for these practices. Simple explanations, of course, must be made as to why it is best to do certain things, but the scientific background necessary to understand healthful living has been withheld until more mature years.

It seems important now that Grade VII is reached to have the child understand the scientific principles underlying the habits he has established. A rational basis for his health practices should have a tendency to more firmly fix these habits and to give a broader understanding of health procedures in general. Also, at this age level, the child should begin to be concerned about more than his own personal health. He should now begin to realize what others have contributed to his safety and well-being, and he should develop an attitude of responsibility towards protecting and improving the health of others in the family and in the community.

In order to lay a basis for the two units in Grade VIII, the Grade VII work is based on the theme, "What man has accomplished in his efforts to conquer disease and to acquire health." Both the Grade VII units aim at developing an appreciation of the long difficult struggle man has made to overcome disease and the great body of scientific information that lies behind the health and well-being of people today.

The two Grade VIII units aim to develop the child's responsibility for his own health. The first unit enables him to form judgments regarding himself, and the second unit presents health problems based on simple knowledge of the structures of the body.

No programme in health education can be regarded as adequate which does not provide for warnings as to the dangers for intermediate grade pupils which may result from the use of tobacco, alcohol, and other habit forming drugs. Teachers are urged to inform themselves fully as to the conclusions reached by scientists who have studied the effects of these drugs on general health. Information will be found in the reference books listed throughout these outlines.

Other Phases of the Health Programme.

I.—Maintenance of a healthful environment:

- (1) Ventilation—The teacher should see that the room is kept at an even temperature (about 68 degrees). There should be a good circulation of air, preferably from windows that open from the top. If possible some moisture should be added to the air by means of a water pan on the stove or furnace or by some other method.

- (2) The teacher should see that the pupils are seated in desks adjusted to their size. Make this a class project and have the pupils measure and adjust the seats and desks.
- (3) The teacher should make every effort to get the best light possible. Consider not only the windows and blinds, but also the colour of the walls and ceiling to get good reflection of light.
- (4) The teacher should make sure that there is an adequate supply of good drinking water and that it is dispensed in a sanitary manner.
- (5) The teacher should see that there is adequate equipment for washing purposes—basins, soap, individual towels, pail for waste wash water.
- (6) The school must be well swept and dusted. Outbuildings must be kept clean.
- (7) Every effort should be made to acquire some playground equipment.

II.—*Incidental teaching*: Incidental teaching as the occasion arises is an exceedingly important part of the health education programme. The teacher should be alert to the opportunities that present themselves in the teaching of other subjects, particularly science and social studies. He should also make the most of the occasions that arise in the classroom where health instruction is necessary.

Attention should be called to reports in local papers of incidents in which juries, magistrates or high courts point out that fires, accidents or crime result from the carelessness or wrong habits of the participants.

III.—*Health inspection*: In these upper grades this will be entirely informal, and may be done in a casual but careful fashion as the pupils come in or as the teacher goes about the room. The teacher should watch for unusual symptoms, such as sore eyes, pallor, fresh cold, flushed face, rash, etc. Also, this is a good time to check up on the practice of health habits, as cleanliness, neatness, removal of extra wraps, etc.

IV.—*The school lunch hour*: In rural schools or in schools where children bring their lunches, every effort should be made to have this period prove a valuable health experience. It is a real situation that lends itself to an extraordinary amount of good, practical health teaching. The children should wash their hands before eating. They should sit down and eat their lunches together in a comfortable, friendly way. There should be pleasant conversation. It is a good time to check up on the kinds of lunches the children eat and how to make suggestions as to the best kinds of lunches and how to pack them. In cold weather a hot drink should be served.

V.—*Hygiene of instruction*: Hygiene of instruction involves such problems as the pupil load, that is, the number and sequence of subjects, the length of the lesson periods, the number of relaxation periods, provision for rest and extra-curricular activities. The teacher should take time to make a survey in order to make sure that the school programme is not taxing the strength of any child or in any way undermining the health of the pupil.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER.

1. *School Health Problems*—Chenoweth and Selkirk (Crofts).
2. *Hygiene for Students and Teachers*—C. G. Eastwood (The Macmillan Co.).
3. *Healthful Living*—H. S. Diehl (McGraw Hill Book Co., N.Y.).
4. *Modern School Hygiene*—R. Gamlin (The Copp Clark Co.).
5. *Health Work in the Schools*—Hoag and Terman (Houghton Mifflin Co.).
6. *College Textbook of Hygiene and Community Hygiene*—Smiley and Gould (The Macmillan Co.).
7. *Biology and Human Welfare*—Peabody and Hunt (The Macmillan Co.).

GRADE VII

UNIT I.

To study the progress man has made through the ages in meeting his health problems.

Objective:

To give an understanding of the progress man has made in overcoming disease and in preserving health; to develop an appreciation of the great problems and difficulties man has mastered to acquire the vast amount of scientific information we now use to keep us well.

1.—How Primitive Peoples Treated Sickness.

Primitive peoples thought that sickness was due to angry gods or to evil spirits. Health practices consisted of various means to placate the gods or of magic and charms to drive out the evil spirits. Healing was part of religion and was bound up with medicine men or priests who knew the ritual.

*How was disease treated by North American Indians?

Look through a history of Canada to discover the diseases that troubled the Indians.

What methods are used by the Eskimos in treating illness?

Find out some of the treatments given by the medicine men.

How did charms come to be used?

Find out the meaning of incantations and how they were used.

What are some superstitions present today that have grown out of the use of charms?

Write down as many common superstitions as you can think of and give reasons why you think they grew up.

What is the origin of sacrifices?

Read stories of native life in Africa or Australia to see if you can discover their methods of treating disease.

2.—Health Practices of Early Civilizations.

Early civilizations made a slight advancement. The Hebrews isolated the sick and quarantined houses for certain kinds of disease. Laws were made respecting cleanliness and sanitation. The Greeks were the first people to begin the study of a disease in a scientific manner. Hippocrates is called the Father of Medicine because he was the first to recognize that disease was the result of natural causes. He definitely separated healing from religion. The Romans made great advances

*All problems and activities given in this unit are merely suggestive.

in sanitation. They paved the streets and provided drains. They built beautiful baths and developed an exceptionally fine water supply.

What diseases are mentioned in the Bible?

What did the Hebrews think was the cause of disease?

How were wounds dressed in Bible times?

What conditions in ancient times were conducive to the spread of leprosy?

What treatments did the Greeks have for disease?

What is the origin of the Olympic games? What influence had this custom on the health of the people?

How did Rome get a good water supply?

What sanitary precautions did the Romans take to make their city more healthful?

Look through a few chapters in some of the books of the Old Testament to discover the diseases that troubled the Hebrews and their explanation of the cause.

See if you can discover some of the methods used by the Hebrews to prevent the spread of disease, e.g., in Leviticus, Chapters 13 and 14.

Read in the story of Ben Hur about the treatment of lepers.

See what information you can find on the temples of healing in Greece.

List important health habits practised by the Greeks.

Read the story of the life of Hippocrates.

Look up in a history of the Roman period the sanitary measures undertaken by the Romans.

3.—The Dark Ages and Their Effect on the Progress of Health.

This was a barren period in health progress. Superstition prevailed. Great plagues swept across Europe—the Black Death, cholera, smallpox. Cities and towns sprang up with little sanitation. People did not practise the simplest laws of personal cleanliness. The poor lived in small, dark, crowded houses. Laws were made respecting the quarantine of ships.

Why did so much sickness prevail during the Middle Ages?

Read in a history of the conditions that prevailed during the Dark Ages. Discuss the causes of the great plagues of this period.

What diseases are carried by vermin? Why was vermin so prevalent?

Find out why the writings of Galen hampered medical progress.

Why did such diseases as smallpox and cholera spread rapidly?

Explain why skin diseases were so prevalent.

When was soap first manufactured? What influence would it have on the spread of disease?

Find out what you can about the early universities in Europe—Padua, Salerno, Bologna.

Who were the doctors of this period? Were there any universities?

Tell about the barber-surgeons.

What is the origin of "quarantine"?

Read about the first precautions taken to prevent the spread of disease from port to port. Compare with modern regulations.

4.—The Revival of Learning and its Effect on the Health of the People.

A scientific study of the human body was begun. Vesalius wrote the first book in anatomy. William Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood. The first microscope was made. The Factory Act slightly improved working conditions; prison reform was begun. Jenner discovered vaccination. Florence Night-

ingale began the training of nurses. Pasteur discovered that germs cause disease and proved how immunity might be created. Surgery was improved because of the work of Lister. A scientific study of the growth of bacteria was begun by Koch. The X-ray was discovered.

What prevented the study of the human body earlier in history?

What had people believed about the heart and the blood previous to Harvey's time?

What great discovery was dependent upon the microscope?

What effect had factories on the health of the people?

What was Jenner's method of vaccinating?

Why did Pasteur's work revolutionize health work?

Why did so many people die in hospitals previous to the time of Lister?

What is the origin of the Red Cross movement?

Explain why religions in this period slowed up the progress of medicine.

Read the story of the life of William Harvey.

Read the story of Leeuwenhoek.

Look up in a history of England the conditions that prevailed in the factories.

Compare the treatment of prisoners in that period with the treatment given today.

Discuss the elimination of the terrible scourge of smallpox.

Read the life of Pasteur and make a list of his great discoveries.

Collect some X-ray pictures from a doctor or dentist.

Compare modern hospitals with those of Lister's time.

Read about the work of Florence Nightingale and Henri Dunant.

5.—Some Recent Discoveries that Have Promoted Health.

Radium has been discovered. Dr. Banting discovered insulin for the treatment of diabetes. Many toxins, antitoxins and vaccines are made. The vitamins have been discovered. The germs that cause many diseases have been isolated.

Why are communicable diseases gradually being eliminated?

Watch for articles on new discoveries in health. Collect clippings from newspapers and magazines.

What is the difference between toxins and antitoxins?

Discuss advertisements of drugs, cosmetics and toilet goods and try to form sound judgments regarding the value of the advertised product.

In what way has health become commercialized?

Read about the discovery of radium.

What diseases are still prevalent today?

What types of research are being carried on at the present time?

Find out how vaccine is made.

REFERENCES FOR THE PUPIL:

Health Through the Ages; Man's Fight Against Disease—The Metropolitan Insurance Co.

Men Who Found Out; Williams-Ellis—Gerald Howe, London.

Science in the Service of Health; Downing—Longmans Green.

Health Through Science; Charters, Smiley and Strang—Macmillan.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER:

The Microbe Hunters; De Kruif—Harcourt Brace.

Men Against Death; De Kruif—Harcourt Brace.

Rats, Lice and History; Zinsser—Musson Book Co.

UNIT II.

To study what man has done to get a good food supply and the importance of food to health.

Objectives.

To have the class realize the difficulties people have overcome in getting an adequate food supply and to develop an appreciation of the enormous amount of scientific research that has been done to discover the constituents of foods and the use the body makes of them; to develop an understanding of food values and the planning of good meals.

1.—How Have Food Habits Changed with Civilization?

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) What did primitive man eat? | List the food eaten by the North American Indians.
Find out what the natives of Africa or Australia eat.
Find out what people ate in Bible times.
Read the history of early Britons to discover something of their food supply. |
| (2) Why did man begin the cultivation of seeds and plants? | Read from a history or other book to discover when animals were domesticated and how early people cared for their animals. |
| (3) How did man get a constant meat supply? | Try to find out when grains were first cultivated. |
| (4) How did national food habits develop, e.g., the Japanese, the Eskimos, the Tibetans, the Italians? | Compare food customs of people in other countries with ours, and explain why these differences arose. |
| (5) How did man learn that disease might come through faulty diet? | Read the story of the Crusades. Many of the soldiers died from scurvy.
Look up the story of Captain Cook and find out how he eliminated scurvy.
See if you can find any material on the ancient disease, beriberi, and find out how the Japanese eliminated it from their navy. |
| (6) What has science done to improve our food supply? | Read the story of the life of Pasteur and find out how he eliminated anthrax among sheep and cholera in chickens.
Read how Carleton and Saunders improved the wheat grown in America.
Read the story of the life of Burbank.
List some of the scientific inventions that have improved our food supply.
Watch the newspapers and make a book of clippings of news items concerned with food. |

(7) What are some of the faults of our modern food habits?

List the arguments for and against refined foods.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of roughage in foods?

Discuss how the consumption of certain foods have changed, e.g., the increase in the consumption of sugar, the decrease in the amount of bread eaten and the increase in the amount of vegetables used.

2.—How Can One Judge the Effect of a Good Diet?

(1) *By weight and growth.*

Should one weigh a certain amount for one's height and age?

Weight tables give average and not normal weight. They should be used only as a reference for the teacher, and are not for the use of the pupil. It is not important that a child conform to the average as set down on a weight table, but it is important for him to gain in weight month by month.

Why is it a good idea to be weighed regularly month by month?

Have each child keep a weight graph on which he records his weight month by month. (A good chart may be obtained free for each child by sending to the Canadian Tuberculosis Association, Ottawa.)

Why does it matter if one is thin? Or overweight?

Discuss when it is not a good thing to be too much underweight as it results in fatigue, lowered resistance, etc.

What are the best ways to increase in weight or to reduce in weight?

Make a list of some of the causes of underweight.

Discuss newspaper advertisements for reducing in weight.

(2) *By energy for work and play.*

What is the source of energy? How is the energy value of food measured?

Compare the human body with an engine, both requiring fuel to produce energy.

Which foods give the most energy?

Show by some simple experiments that oxygen is necessary to burn any substance, e.g., candle in a jar, close drafts in stove, etc.

What forms of work or exercise take the most energy?

Why do you get hot when you run fast?

How can it be determined how many calories a person needs?

Read in any health book how the air gets to the cells to burn the food.

What would happen if you did not have enough calories?

Find out how it may be determined how much heat each kind of food will give.

What class of foods are used by the body for heat and energy?

Estimate the number of calories you need in a day. (See table in "Health Through Science," p. 34.)

Work out the number of calories you eat for breakfast or dinner. (See tables on pages 41-44 in "Health Through Science.")

Discuss carbohydrates and fats and show why they are our best energy foods.

(3) *By the growth of muscle and other cells.*

How do cells grow? What do cells need in order to grow?

Draw a diagram showing how cells multiply.

Explain why cells need food, oxygen, water, etc., in order to grow.

What particular kind of food is used by the body for building cells?

Make a chart showing the protein foods. Put the best proteins on the left side and the poorer ones on the right. (Look up the charts shown in "Health Through Science.")

Why are minerals needed by the cells?

Find out how they make iodized salt. (A free booklet may be obtained from Canadian Industries Limited, Montreal.)

What is the particular use of calcium? Phosphorus? Iron? Iodine? Why might people in Alberta be troubled with goitre?

Discuss why sea food contains a good deal of iodine.

Compare milk with other foods as a source of calcium.

Plan a diet which would be rich in iron.

(4) *By keeping well and having a high resistance to disease.*

How were vitamins discovered? Do we know the composition of vitamins? Can they be seen?

Read the accounts of some experiments that have been done to prove that animals can't live without vitamins.

What is the value of Vitamin A? Why is Vitamin D important to young people?

How has it been proven that Vitamin A is needed for growth? for the health of the eyes? (See "Foundations of Nutrition" by Rose.)

What are the other vitamins and what is their function?

Make a table showing the important functions and the best sources of each of the vitamins.

Can we get too many vitamins? What is the value of sun baths?

Cut pictures from magazines of various foods and arrange them on charts to show the best sources of each of the vitamins.

What are some of the signs of rickets?

Explain why it is important for young children to have cod liver oil during the winter months in this climate.

How is the vitamins content of foods destroyed?

What vitamins are important to the building of good teeth?

Plan a week's menu which will give some raw food each day.

3.—What is the Value of Special Foods?

What is the value of candy? Is it harmful? What are the best kinds of candy?

Explain that candy is an energy food, but provides no building substances, no minerals or vitamins. The best time to eat candy is after meals so that it will not take away our appetite for better foods.

Discuss various kinds of candy and good substitutes for candy as nuts, raisins, dates, etc.

Are tea and coffee harmful?

Explain that tea and coffee have no food value except the cream and sugar that are added and that they take the place of milk which growing children need. They also may act as a stimulant which may be harmful to children.

Are soft drinks harmful?

Discuss the various kinds of soft drinks and show that they have little food value. List good substitutes for soft drinks as milk shakes, ice cream and fresh fruit juices.

Could alcohol be considered a food?

Explain that alcohol does burn to produce a small amount of heat and energy, but that its effects may be extremely harmful. Used continuously it destroys tissue, lessens the ability of white corpuscles to kill disease germs, lessens the power of body anti-toxins, and generally lowers the power of resistance.

4.—What is the Value of Water in Good Nutrition?

How is water used in the body?

Do some simple experiments to show that all living things contain a large amount of water.

What are the different ways the body obtains water?

List the various uses of water in the body. Water forms about two-thirds of body weight and is necessary for digestion, absorption of food, elimination, regulation of temperature, etc.

How much water is needed every day?

Should one drink water with one's meals?

Discuss various ways water is lost from the body.

How long can one go without water?

How is water lost from the body?

Do a simple experiment to show that combustion produces water.

Why should one drink large amounts of water during an infectious disease?

Show that food burning in the body produces water.

What may happen within the body if one does not receive enough water?

Compare the water content of various foods.

How does water become contaminated?

Discuss your local water supply as to dangers of contamination, good drinking qualities, etc.

5.—Of What Importance are Good Habits in Eating?

Why is it important to eat at regular times?

Discuss habits conducive to good digestion giving the physiological reason for each.

Why should one eat slowly and chew food well?

Why does worry and anger upset digestion?	Explain that good table manners add to one's enjoyment of a meal and so are an aid to digestion.
Why is it a good idea to rest for a short time after meals?	
Should one eat before going to bed?	

REFERENCES FOR THE PUPIL:

Health Through Science; Charters, Smiley and Strang—Macmillan.
Healthy Bodies; Fowlkes and Jackson—J. C. Winston Co.
Building for Health; Burkard, Chambers and Maroney—Ryerson Press.
Physiology and Health; Turner—D. C. Heath and Co.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER:

Teaching Nutrition to Boys and Girls—Macmillan.
Foundations of Nutrition; Rose—Macmillan.
Nutrition and Physical Fitness; Bogert—Macmillan.
Food Models; Roberts—University of Chicago Press.
How to Live; Fisher and Fisk—Funk and Wagnalls.

GRADE VIII

UNIT I.

To take stock of one's health.

Aims.

- To survey one's physical health.
- To discover if one is developing good mental health.
- To make a survey of one's health practices.

Suggestions to the Teacher as to How to Develop This Unit.

In the elementary school the teacher is largely responsible for making the health examination, but beginning at the junior high school level, the teacher should put most of the responsibility on the child for checking his own health practices and for estimating his health status. A child in Grade VIII should be able to make a health examination of himself. Listed below are some of the questions a child should ask himself in evaluating his physical and mental health as well as his health habits. These questions are only to serve as a guide. The teacher might find that in her particular school they by no means cover the situation.

It might be a good idea for a child to rule out a score card covering these various phases of the health examination and to give himself a rating.

In testing eyes let the children work with partners, but do not attempt to do this checking in large groups as the children quickly memorize the letters on the chart. Hectographed sheets containing the everyday health habits which we think are necessary to good health might be given to each child with a place to score his achievement. An effort should be made to emphasize the practice of those habits that are generally neglected. These would form a good beginning for the next unit as the physiological reasons for such practices could be stressed.

I.—Making a Survey of One's Physical Health.

1. Does my weight indicate good health?

One indication of good health is a gradual increase in weight month by month. Keep a simple weight graph and be weighed about the same time

each month. (Weight charts may be obtained free from the Canadian Tuberculosis Association, Plaza Building, Ottawa. Bathroom scales may be purchased for a little less than five dollars.)

There is no need for a child to conform to an average or so-called normal weight as set down by a weight table. It is important only that a child shows a gradual increase in weight month by month.

2. Do I need to improve my posture?

- (a) Study posture charts to decide what good posture is and to discover what are the common defects. (A good set of charts may be obtained from the United States Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., for fifty cents.)
- (b) Observe one's characteristic posture in a long mirror. Watch for such defects as round shoulders, flat chest, head thrust forward, hollow back, protruding abdomen.
- (c) Try the straight-line test for posture on each other. Make criticisms and suggestions.
- (d) Work out corrective exercises for various types of defective posture.
- (e) Check up on correctness of walking habits—feet placed in a parallel position, neither toeing in or out; weight thrown to the outer border of the foot.
- (f) Estimate the harm done to one's health by poor posture.

3. Is my eyesight normal?

- (a) Each child may test his own eyes, using a Snellen's Eye Test Chart. He should stand twenty feet from the chart and be able to read the twenty foot row from that distance. Each eye should be tested separately. (A good eye chart may be obtained free from the Canadian National Institute for the Blind, 186 Beverley Street, Toronto, Ontario.)
- (b) Check up on symptoms of eyestrain, such as headaches, blurring of letters, dizziness, specks in front of the eyes, styes.

4. Is my hearing normal?

- (a) Test each other's hearing. A person with good hearing should be able to hear numbers whispered at a distance of 20 feet. Test each ear separately, covering one with the hand.
- (b) Check up on other defects, such as running ears, noise or fullness in the ears. All ear abnormalities should be treated by a doctor.

5. Do my teeth need attention?

- (a) Teeth should be checked twice a year by a dentist.
- (b) Check condition of the gums. Do they bleed? Is there any tartar on the teeth?

6. Have I a healthy nose and throat?

- (a) Can I breathe freely through my nose?
- (b) Do I get colds frequently?
- (c) Do I have sore throats frequently?
- (d) Have I ever had a medical opinion on the condition of my throat?
- (e) Do I have frequent nose bleeds?

7. Are my nails, hair and skin healthy and well kept?

- (a) Am I troubled with pimples or blackheads?

- (b) Do I have skin rashes?
- (c) Is my hair glossy and free from dandruff and excessive oil?
- (d) Are my nails smooth and pink?
- 8. Are my feet in good condition?
 - (a) Are my arches normal?
 - (b) Are my feet free of corns and calouses?
 - (c) Am I troubled with ingrown nails?
- 9. Have I the tobacco habit?
 - (a) Am I aware that smoking may check my growth?
 - (b) Do I know that smoking irritates delicate tissues of nose and throat?
 - (c) Do I know that coaches such as Stagg, Rockne and Connie Mack always give the preference to non-smokers?
 - (d) Do I know that cigarette smoking invariably tends to an increasing use of tobacco?

II.—Discovering if One is Developing Good Mental Health.

Am I practising habits that lead to good mental health?

- (a) Am I generally happy?
- (b) Do I worry over trivial things?
- (c) Do I enjoy working with others?
- (d) Am I a good sport in playing games?
- (e) Do I forget grudges quickly?
- (f) Do I co-operate with others?
- (g) Do I help others out of difficulties?
- (h) Have I a good sense of humour?
- (i) Do I appreciate what others do for me?
- (j) Am I polite and courteous to others?
- (k) Have I self-confidence?
- (l) Have I a hobby or do I make good use of my leisure time?
- (m) Have I any habits which might make me irritable or irresponsible?

III.—Making a Survey of One's Health Practices.

Have I acquired habits that lead to good physical health?

- (a) Do I get eight to ten hours sleep every night?
- (b) Do I sleep with my window open?
- (c) Do I take a bath at least twice a week?
- (d) Do I play or exercise out of doors for at least an hour every day?
- (e) Do I wear comfortable walking shoes?
- (f) Do I change my stockings two or three times a week?
- (g) Do I change my underwear at least once a week?
- (h) Do I drink two or three glasses of milk every day?
- (i) Do I eat two vegetables besides potato every day?
- (j) Do I eat some raw fruit or vegetable every day?
- (k) Do I eat some whole-grain cereal product every day?
- (l) Do I eat my meals at regular times?

REFERENCES FOR THE PUPIL:

A Snellen's Eye Chart and literature on care of the eyes may be obtained free from the Canadian National Institute for the Blind, Calgary, Alberta.

Posture Standards, a set of six charts, may be obtained from the United States Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. (50c).

Charts and literature on *dental decay and the care of the teeth* may be obtained free from The Canadian Dental Hygiene Council, Medical Arts Building, Toronto.

Individual Weight Charts may be obtained free from the Canadian Tuberculosis Association, Plaza Building, Ottawa.

Booklets from the Metropolitan Insurance Co.: "Foot Health," "Tonsils and Adenoids."

REFERENCE FOR THE TEACHER:

School Health Problems; Chenoweth and Selkirk—F. S. Crofts & Co., New York.

UNIT II.

To study how the body is made and how it functions.

Aims:

To discuss with the class everyday health problems. To use these problems as a basis in giving scientific information on the structures of the body and how they function, in order that the child may have a more intelligent understanding of how to care for his health.

Suggestions to the Teacher on Developing This Unit.

Do not make this unit a formal study of physiology. It is not necessary that the child should have detailed knowledge regarding any structure, nor should he be concerned with the scientific names. Teach the unit in a psychological rather than a logical manner, that is, begin with a problem the class is interested in and work back to give a scientific explanation of the problem. Raise questions for the class to explain. Try to have good charts showing the various structures of the body and make the work in physiology largely chart study. These charts can be made as a class undertaking, and could be done on heavy sheets of brown paper. Some problems are suggested here with accompanying activities, but these need not be closely followed. The teacher may find that there are other problems which are of greater concern in his school.

1.—Building Blocks of the Body.

Why does one form of matter differ from another? What makes iron different from coal? Rocks from wood? Leaves from bark?

How is living matter made?

Who discovered cells?

What are cells like? How do they grow and multiply?

How many kinds of cells are there in the body?

How do cells make tissues?

How are organs made?

How does healing take place?

Look in a science book to discover why there are different forms of matter.

Find out how Robert Hook or Theodor Schwann discovered cells.

Draw some plant cells.

In a book on physiology read to find out how many kinds of cells there are in the body. Draw these cells.

Name some of the tissues in the body.

Name some of the tissues that make a special organ such as the eye or the foot.

2.—How Does the Body Digest Food and How Can We Care for the Digestive System?

What happens to the food we eat?
How does the food get to the cells?
Why do we need such a variety of foods?
How long can a person go without food? Without water?
What causes indigestion?
Are some special food combinations harmful?
How can one overcome constipation?
What causes vomiting?
What causes appendicitis? Why is it so serious?
Do all foods produce the same amount of heat?
What happens when alcohol is taken into the stomach?
What diseases can be obtained from contaminated food?

Read the story of Lavoisier to find out how he discovered what happens to the food we eat.

Study a chart on the digestive system and trace the passage of food through the body.

The men in the Moose River Mine disaster went eleven days without food. Try to find incidents of other long periods of time that men have gone without food? Why can't people do without water for such long periods?

Find out the symptoms of appendicitis. What is the best first aid treatment? Look this up in a book on physiology.

Characteristic action: (1) to check or impair body activities; (2) to dull the user's ability to judge of its effects upon himself; (3) to deceive the user into thinking it is doing him good when it is really making him less capable and fit.

Explain why practically all nations enact legislation restricting the use of beverage alcohol?

Give the reason why pasteurization of milk makes it safe.

State some regulations that protect our food supply.

3.—What is the Work of the Teeth and What is the Best Way to Build Sound Teeth?

When do the baby teeth begin to form?
What is the importance of the baby teeth?
Why should the baby teeth be kept as long as possible?
Where is the six year molar? Why is it so important?
How are teeth constructed?
What is the actual cause of decay?
Why do teeth come in crooked?
What foods are best for the teeth?
Are some kinds of tooth paste better than others?
What is the best kind of brush?
Why do abscessed teeth lead to rheumatism and heart trouble?
Why is it important to go to a dentist every few months?
What causes gums to bleed?
What is tartar?

Make a chart showing the first set of teeth.

Find out why baby teeth are called pathfinders for the second teeth.

Make a chart of the second teeth and mark the six-year molar.

Draw a diagram showing the structure of the teeth.

Look in a hygiene book to find the explanation of tooth decay.

Read advertisements of tooth pastes and discuss their advertised merits.

Make a tooth powder, using equal quantities of salt, baking soda and camphorated chalk.

Discuss the best kind of tooth brush.

Make out a list of questions that would be interesting to ask your dentist.

Plan a day's menu which would be particularly good for building sound teeth.

4.—What are the Best Ways to Improve the Blood and to Care for the Heart?

Why is heart disease the chief cause of death in Canada?

What are the causes of heart disease?

How can one know if the heart is affected?

How fast does the heart beat?

Why do the veins look blue?

Why is the blood called the great distributing agent of the body?

What makes people pale?

Why does eating liver improve the blood?

What makes the heart beat faster when one runs?

What is the best way to stop a nose bleed? Other haemorrhages?

What is the effect of excessive smoking on the heart?

Write to the Department of Vital Statistics in Edmonton and find out the chief causes of death in Alberta.

Name some of the symptoms of a weak heart.

Count the pulse.

List the various substances that are distributed by the blood.

Read the story of William Harvey.

Learn first-aid treatment of haemorrhages.

Trace the circulation of the blood on a chart.

5.—How Does the Body Provide Oxygen for the Burning Process Going on in the Cells?

Why do we breathe?

How can we prove that respiration is a burning process?

What wastes are always produced by burning?

Does one need a large lung capacity?

What makes the lungs expand and contract?

How is the air carried to the cells?

Why is it so important to breathe through the nose?

What is the work of the tonsils and adenoids?

What causes colds? Can they be prevented? How should they be treated?

What effect has cod liver oil on colds?

Why do colds sometimes cause ear-ache and running ear?

What factors should be considered in good ventilation?

Why does a person suffocate in a smoke-filled room?

Burn a candle in a jar. Why does it go out? Did it make a film of moisture on the jar?

How could you prove that it produced carbon dioxide? How could you show that we breathe out carbon dioxide?

Study a chart of the breathing organs. Name the air passages.

Draw a diagram showing the structure of the nose for cleaning, warming and moistening air.

Mark the position of tonsils and adenoids. Show the eustachian tube.

Read in a hygiene book about the work of the tonsils and adenoids.

Keep a temperature chart of your classroom.

Make a wet and dry bulb hygrometer, using two thermometers. Test the humidity of your room. (Ideal humidity should be about 40.) Try to discover some way of adding moisture to your room.

6.—How Does the Skin and Kidneys Function to Remove Wastes From the Body?

Where do the wastes come from that are removed by the kidneys?

Why do infectious diseases such as scarlet fever and diphtheria injure the kidneys?

Make a drawing showing the position of the kidneys and bladder.

Read in a hygiene book about the work of the kidneys.

What is the chief function of perspiration?

Can we breathe through the skin?

Does the skin absorb moisture?

What makes the skin rough and chapped?

Why is frequent bathing important to the health of the skin?

What causes boils?

Draw a cross section of the skin showing the sweat glands and oil glands.

Write a note explaining how the temperature of the body is controlled.

See if you can improve the washing facilities in your school.

Make a cheap hand lotion to be used during the winter (glycerine and water will do).

7.—How Can One Build Strong, Well-formed Bones?

What is the purpose of a framework?

How is the skeleton adapted to make a superior framework?

When are the bones completely hardened?

How are the joints made to get ease of movement without friction?

Why is sunshine important to bones?

Why is cod liver oil a good substitute for sunshine in the winter months?

What makes bow legs and knock-knees?

Does the right kind of food make one grow taller?

Study the framework of the body on a chart or in a book. Notice what parts are made for protection; what parts for movement.

Get a bone from the butcher shop and study its structure. Notice how strength and lightness are obtained.

Examine a joint to see how it is made.

List foods that are good sources of calcium and phosphorus.

Grade each other's posture.

Find out the best first-aid treatment for a broken bone.

8.—What is the Best Way to Develop and Train the Muscles?

Why does exercise make bigger muscles?

Why does practice in learning to play a game make one play it better?

What makes muscles ache after exercise?

What makes one short of breath when playing hard?

What foods help to build muscles?

What muscles circulate our blood? Help us to talk? Allow us to breathe?

What is a sprain?

Why do great athletes abstain from the use of alcohol and tobacco?

Study a chart showing the muscles of the body. Notice the great number and the variety in size and shape.

Feel and locate several muscles in the body. Show how they produce movement by contraction and relaxation.

Examine a muscle from a chicken or small animal. Take a whole muscle with its attached tendon. Notice the difference between the body of the muscle and the tendon.

Examine some boiled beef. Notice that the muscle falls apart in bundles and that the bundles can be broken into thread-like fibres.

List the work done by muscles.

Find out the best first-aid treatment for a sprain.

9.—What is the Best Way to Care for the Eyes and Ears?

How does the eye work?

What protection has nature given the eyes?

What part of the eye acts as a shutter?

How does the eye adjust itself to near and distant objects?

What is the best reading position?

Study a chart of the eyes and observe its parts.

Compare the eye with a camera.

Do some experiments to prove what is the best light for reading.

Criticize the lighting of your classroom.

What causes eye-strain?
 What is meant by astigmatism?
 How do glasses correct eyesight?
 Does boric acid strengthen the eyes?
 What causes blindness?
 What is pink eye? How is it spread?
 What causes deafness? What causes a running ear?
 What is the best way to blow the nose to prevent ear injury?
 What causes a full sensation or noises in the ear?
 Why is it important to see a doctor if one has ear trouble?

Name the factors that must be considered in good lighting.
 State the habits that tend to protect you against eye infections.
 Find out the best way of taking a foreign body out of the eye.
 Write a story on the history of spectacles.
 Study a drawing of the ear to see how it works. Trace the path of the vibrations.
 List the chief causes of deafness.
 Find out the best way of removing a foreign body from the ear.

10.—How Can One Have a Well-adjusted Nervous System?

Why does playing games help the nervous system?
 Having a hobby is a boon to the nervous system. Why?
 What makes people feel jumpy and on edge?
 What is the meaning of a nervous breakdown?
 How do nerves carry messages?
 Where are messages interpreted?
 Can a cut nerve heal and function again?
 What happens to the nerves to make us feel tired?
 Why is it dangerous to kill a nerve in a tooth?
 What effect has alcohol on the nervous system? Tobacco?

Look at a chart of the nervous system and observe its general plan.
 Draw a nerve cell and describe how it functions.
 Do a little experiment to prove that when a room is hot the nervous system tires more easily.
 Dissect the nerve of a chicken and extract the nerve.
 Name a few important nerves in the body.
 Explain why sleep is important to the nervous system.
 Read about the care of the nervous system in a hygiene book.
 Investigate the records of life insurance companies as to the relative longevity of users of alcohol and abstainers.

REFERENCES FOR THE PUPIL:

Health Through Science; Charters, Smiley and Strang—Macmillan Co.
The Body's Needs; Charters, Smiley and Strang—The Macmillan Co.
Physiology and Health; Turner—D. C. Heath & Co.
Everyday Problems in Health; Wheat and Fitzpatrick—American Book Co.
Science and the Way to Health; Andress and Brown—Ginn & Co.

REFERENCES FOR THE TEACHER:

The Human Body; Best and Taylor—Gage.
Fundamentals of Health; Kirkpatrick and Huettner—Ginn.
Hygiene for Students and Teachers; Eastwood—The Macmillan Co.
Alcohol—Its Relation to Human Efficiency and Longevity; Fisk—Funk and Wagnalls.
Alcohol—Its Effect on Mind and Efficiency—British Medical Research Council.

GRADE IX.

UNIT I.—KEEPING THE COMMUNITY HEALTHY

1.—Providing a good water supply.

(See also the work in General Science on water.)

- (1) Qualities of good drinking water.
- (2) Quantity required in cities, on farms, etc.; the relation of water supply to health; conservation of water.
- (3) Means of obtaining a large supply of water for cities and towns; how water is delivered to the homes.
- (4) Purification of water for cities and towns; action of sunlight and oxygen in a settling basin; how water is filtered; use of chemicals.
- (5) Wells—kinds, placement, protection.
- (6) Impurities in water—vegetable life, minerals, bacteria.
- (7) Precautions taken to prevent contamination.
- (8) Hard and soft waters; how water may be softened.
- (9) Dispensing water in schools and public places.

2.—Protecting the Community's Food Supply.

(a) Protecting the milk supply:

- (1) Why it is important to make regulations and to take precautions to protect milk.
- (2) Testing cows for tuberculosis—method used, significance.
- (3) Public health regulations with regard to the sale of milk as set down in The Public Health Act, i.e., standards regarding butter-fat content, solids, number of bacteria, etc.
- (4) Scientific test used on milk; methods of pasteurization.
- (5) Plan of a modern city dairy.
- (6) Care of milk on the farm and in the home.

(a) Protecting the general food supply:

- (1) Protecting the people against food adulteration; some of the regulations made by the Dominion and Provincial authorities.
- (2) Inspection and grading of meats.
- (3) Regulations regarding sanitation in places where food is sold—markets, stores, restaurants, etc.
- (4) Grading of butter and eggs.
- (5) How foods are likely to become contaminated and carry disease germs.

3.—The Sanitary Disposal of Wastes in the Community.

(a) The disposal of rubbish and garbage:

- (1) Methods used by large cities to dispose of garbage.
- (2) Care of garbage in the home.
- (3) Keeping the farm free from rubbish and garbage.
- (4) Why rubbish and garbage are a menace to health; breeding flies, source of disease germs, danger of fire, etc.

- (b) The disposal of sewage:
 - (1) How sewage is disposed of in large cities.
 - (2) Sanitary disposal on the farm—use of cesspools, tanks, filters, etc.
 - (3) The process of oxidation by which wastes are broken down.
 - (4) Protecting streams and wells from contamination.

4.—Controlling Insect Pests in the Community.

- (a) Eliminating the housefly; stages in the development of the fly; how flies carry disease; best means of exterminating flies.
- (b) Controlling the mosquito pest.

5.—How Health Departments Serve the Community.

- (a) The organization of the Provincial Health Department; the work of this department; some important regulations made by this department.
- (b) The organization of the local health department; members of this department; how they promote the health of the community.

6.—How Hospitals and Sanatoria Serve the Community.

- (a) Why hospitals are necessary in the community.
- (b) How we keep up standards in our hospital service.
- (c) How hospitals are classified and supported.

UNIT II.—KEEPING ONESELF HEALTHY

Note.—The material of this unit may be correlated with Household Economics. *

1.—Obtaining the Right Foods.

- (a) Man's great effort to get an adequate food supply. Man's need for food, and his desire for a great variety of foods, have produced wars, migrations, discoveries, etc.
- (b) What man has accomplished in obtaining foods. He has combed the earth's surface, adapted plants to different environments, developed superior plants through experimental breeding, and invented modern refrigeration, which allows fresh foods to be shipped to all parts of the world.
- (c) What happens to food in the body; how it was discovered that food burns; the digestion and absorption of foods; the meaning of metabolism and the factors influencing it.
- (d) The classification of foods and the significance of this classification—proteins, fats and carbohydrates.
- (e) The sources and importance of minerals.
- (f) The work of the vitamins.
- (g) How food values are estimated: the consideration of such factors as calories, class of food, minerals, vitamins and water.
- (h) Building a good diet—things to consider; practice in estimating the food value of various menus.
- (i) Checking the diet by its effect on health; weight and growth; well-formed bones; good muscle tone; sound teeth; colour of skin; energy and endurance.

- (j) Food fads and fancies; learning not to be influenced by commercial advertising and diet faddists, but to form sound judgments regarding foods.
- (k) Types of food poisoning, and protection against it.
- (l) Alcohol not a food: the effect of alcohol taken into the stomach; absorbs quickly and is carried to all parts of the body; burns to produce a small amount of heat and energy; gives no building substances; acts as a narcotic, that is, slows body functions; in excess it destroys tissue, particularly of the liver and kidneys.

2.—The Importance of Sleep.

- (a) The physiological need for sleep—for growth, for repair of tissues, for removal of wastes, etc.
- (b) The conditions necessary for healthful sleep; the amount of sleep needed in relation to age, activity, and underweight.

3.—The Need for Exercise Out-of-Doors.

- (a) The development of muscle co-ordination and tone through sports; improvement of posture; ease and grace of movement.
- (b) The general improvement of all bodily functions through exercise—digestion, circulation, respiration, elimination.
- (c) The social value of games.

4.—Why Cleanliness is Important to Health.

- (a) The need for frequent bathing—the physiological effect on the skin; the antiseptic properties of soap; the value of baths for rest and stimulation.
- (b) The importance of brushing the teeth twice a day: prevention of decay; stimulation of circulation in the gums. Discrimination in the choice of tooth brushes and dentifrices; the merits of advertised dental preparations.
- (c) Care of the nails and the hair.

5.—Selection and Care of Clothing.

- (a) Differences in use and wearing qualities of various kinds of cloth, such as silk, wool, cotton, and rayon. How fabrics are made, treated, and adulterated. The need for wise choice in buying clothes.
- (b) How one should take care of clothes. Why soap removes stains and grease. The effect of hot water on wool. Why blueing is used. Proper ironing, especially of rayon fabrics. How to remove stains and spots.
- (c) Good shoes—points of a good shoe; how shoes are made; disadvantages of rubber shoes or rubber soles; making sure that one is well fitted.

6.—Care of Special Organs: Eyes, Ears, Nose and Throat.

- (a) Common defects in eyesight; prevention of eye infections; care of the eyes.
- (b) Causes of deafness; prevention of ear infections; danger of a running ear; care of the ears.
- (c) Position and function of the tonsils and adenoids; why they become infected and enlarged and the effect on general health; the prevention and care of colds and sore throats.

7.—Keeping Free of Communicable Diseases.

- (a) Why many diseases have been almost eliminated; e.g., smallpox, diphtheria, typhoid fever.
- (b) The importance of acquiring immunity through vaccination or inoculation; what happens within the body to establish immunity.
- (c) The diseases of adolescence; e.g., tuberculosis.
- (d) Building up a high resistance to disease. Sufficient rest, outdoor exercise, regular meals, etc. Use of alcohol lowers resistance to disease, particularly pneumonia.
- (e) Keeping health regulations; such as those regarding isolation and quarantine.

8.—Developing Good Mental Habits.

- (a) Mental and emotional health. Learn to take a keen active interest in friends, games and hobbies; learn to persevere in work, to meet disappointments bravely, to forget grudges quickly, to enjoy humorous situations, to be tolerant of the opinions of others, etc.
- (b) Establish good social relationships. Be friendly towards others; take part in games and other social activities; appreciate what others can do, and try to do a few things well.
- (c) The economy of habit and the need to form correct habits; habits ease the strain on the nervous system; some harmful habits are easily formed such as the use of tobacco, drugs and alcohol.
- (d) Develop critical judgments. Learn to weigh and measure or evaluate the things in life. Don't be influenced by the opinions of others without thinking through the problem for oneself. Try to form sound judgments on such things as patent medicines, cosmetics and the use of alcohol and tobacco.

No programme in Health Education for adolescents can be complete without a treatment of the use of alcohol and tobacco, and instruction in social hygiene. Nevertheless, these topics do not easily lend themselves to school instruction, and the latter, especially, has a peculiar potency for irritating the sensibilities and provoking misunderstanding. It is the consensus of competent opinion that in teaching the hygiene of alcohol and tobacco, more is gained by the "method of indirection" than by a direct frontal attack on the subject. Only proved facts should be stated, for the reason that good intentions do not make up for a want of scientific accuracy or authenticity. It is not difficult for the teacher to introduce the topic effectively when dealing with the functions of the heart or the nervous system. In such a case the treatment is incidental and subsidiary, but none the less convincing. The problem of alcohol should be kept in its proper perspective. It is not only a health problem, but a social and economic problem as well.

Suggestion.

Have the pupils conduct a survey of health habits in the school and the community.

UNIT III.—LEARNING TO PREVENT ACCIDENTS, AND BEING READY TO
MEET EMERGENCIES

1.—Prevention of Accidents.

- (a) In Alberta, accidents stand third in the list of causes of death. The pupils should obtain figures on mortality, both from the Provincial and from the Dominion Bureau of Statistics. They should also tabulate the causes of accidents from newspaper accounts.
- (b) What is to be done to prevent motor accidents? Study traffic and highway regulations; precautions to be taken both by driver and pedestrian. Why are motor-car accidents increasing at an amazing rate? Alcohol is one of the causes of motor accidents as it slows up the reaction time of the nervous system. It takes longer to see, interpret danger and apply brakes; nervous control and motor co-ordination are definitely reduced by alcohol. It interferes with judgment and increases errors.
- (c) Prevention of accidents in the home—particular attention to fire, electricity, gas.

2.—Knowing What to Do in An Emergency.

- (a) What to do for simple injuries: the best first-aid treatment for a cut, a bruise, a burn, a sprained ankle, or a frost-bite.
- (b) How to check bleeding; e.g., from the nose, or from a blood vessel in the arm or leg; internal bleeding.
- (c) What to do in case of asphyxiation—from apparent drowning, from smoke or gas poisoning, from electric shock.
- (d) What to do if you suspect a broken bone. How to recognize a fracture; what to do for a simple and a compound fracture.
- (e) What to do if you suspect poisoning. How to recognize poisoning; how to determine the treatment for poisoning. The best treatment for a few common types of poisoning.
- (f) Planning an emergency cupboard or a first-aid kit for home or school—drugs needed; how to make sterile dressings at home; how to improvise splints, slings, etc.

REFERENCE BOOKS

For the Teacher:

- "Fundamentals of Health"; Kirkpatrick & Huettner—Ginn.
- "The Human Body"; Best and Taylor—Gage.
- "Foundations of Nutrition"; Rose—Macmillan.
- "Teaching Nutrition to Boys and Girls"; Rose—Macmillan.
- "Nutrition and Physical Fitness"; Bozert—Saunders.
- "Home and Community Hygiene"; Broadhurst—Lippincott.
- "Everyday Problems in Science"; Pieper and Beauchamp—Gage.
- "Personal Hygiene Applied"; Williams—Saunders.
- "St. John Ambulance Society Book on First Aid."

For the Pupils:

- "Science in the Service of Health"; Downing—Longmans, Green.
"Useful Science," Book II; Weed and Rexford—Winston.
"Health Through Science"; Charters, Smiley & Strang—Macmillan.
"The Hunger Fighters"; DeKruif—Harcourt-Brace.
"Community Health"; Turner and Collins—Heath.
"Physiology and Health"; Turner—Heath.
"Everyday Problems in Health"; Wheat and Fitzpatrick—American Book Co.
"Science and the Way to Health"; Andress and Brown—Ginn.

B.—PHYSICAL EDUCATION

TEXTBOOK AND REFERENCE BOOKS

1.—Authorized for the use of all teachers:

- "Physical Education for Schools and Colleges" (Barker).

2.—Recommended as reference books.

- (1) "Syllabus of Physical Training for Schools" (Board of Education).
- (2) "Book of Games" (Staley).
- (3) "Tumbling for Women and Girls" (B. and D. Cotterall).
- (4) "Folk Dances of the People" (Burchenal).

SCOPE OF THE COURSE

- (Barker)—Tables 1—4 inclusive;
5—10 "
16—20 "

The value of "sets" or "tables" of free-arm exercises and classroom calisthenics has been very effectively challenged. It is being widely recognized that such exercises usually lack motivation, and that unless there is a desire on the part of the student to do well, and a feeling of satisfaction and pleasure, a great deal of the value has been lost. For this reason a variety of physical activities is being substituted for the rigid, formal exercises. It is recommended that a lesson in Physical Training should always follow the plan of the recreational tables, No. 1-4; that is, only at the beginning and conclusion of the lesson should there be formal exercises, the main part of the lesson being devoted to two or more general activities.

In using Tables 5-10 (boys), and 16-20 (girls), the teacher is advised to plan lessons as for Tables 1-4, keeping the formal work limited to one opening and one closing exercise.

It is expected that teachers will familiarize themselves with the details of class management described in the text, and that physical training classes will no longer be characterized by pupils standing still while the instructor gives long and detailed direction and involved words of command. In the formal exercises the sequence of movements should be very simple and should be practised to the point where they can be done in unison and rhythm on such a word as "begin." The ideal should be unceasing activity by all members of the class throughout the class period.

In many small schools most of this physical training work will have to be done out-of-doors. In many places arrangements have been made to secure the use of a

local hall. The latter practice should be extended until school boards are in a position to provide adequate gymnasium facilities for their schools.

The organization of teams for inter-school competition cannot be considered as part of the work of this course, as it makes provision only for the development of greater skill by a number of pupils. On the other hand, the organization of all students into teams, and the operation of "house leagues," does contribute to the realization of the aims of this part of the course.

MATHEMATICS

INTRODUCTION—GRADES VII, VIII AND IX

One may assume that the majority of children in Alberta will continue their schooling at least to the end of the Intermediate School. It follows that the Mathematics of Grades VII, VIII and IX must be of interest to all pupils. The content must be suited to the general-course pupil as well as to the future matriculant. It must, to be understood, be related to the child's out-of-school environment. It should, wherever possible, include activities and references to concrete situations.

Many pupils will not continue their schooling beyond Grade IX. It is not desirable, therefore, to spend their time on perfecting techniques of computation which they will seldom if ever use. It is preferable to introduce them to as wide a range of interpretative Mathematics as possible. There are concepts in Algebra and in Geometry which are easily understood, and which will make meaningful much of the child's out-of-school experience. The Mathematics of the intermediate school introduces this easier work in Geometry and in Algebra and fuses it with the Arithmetic. The principles of Arithmetic become the principles of Algebra expressed in general numbers, and the measurement of Arithmetic becomes the specialized measurement of Geometry.

Since the aim of the course is to interpret the environment rather than to give skill in computation, emphasis is placed on easy mathematical relationships expressed in the form of tables, graphs, formulas and equations. Easy applications of seemingly difficult types of thinking are introduced, particularly in Grades VII and VIII. The concrete setting allows the pupil to understand the relationship; whereas, a more verbal and logically arranged presentation would not be understood. The stress is placed throughout upon wide training rather than upon the mastery of difficult techniques.

Although the fundamental operations with integers and fractions have been stressed in previous grades, there is constant drill and review upon them in Grades VII and VIII. Teachers should note the presence in the texts of many types of test material. They should study and master their use. There are general survey tests for each process; there are diagnostic tests to locate specific weaknesses; and there are periodic practice tests. *All children need not take all tests.* The text-writers assume that individual differences will be recognized.

In Grades VII and VIII, major space and attention are given to Arithmetic, although intuitive Geometry and easy algebraic notions are introduced. In Grade IX, the emphasis is placed upon Geometry and Algebra. In the Geometry, the role of logic has been minimized, and major emphasis has been placed upon the

perception and interpretation of spatial relationships. *Teachers will note that model proofs have been replaced by outline proofs to be completed by the students. It is hoped that the more informal treatment of propositions will decrease the tendency of pupils to memorize stated proofs.*

Many of the earlier fundamental propositions are accepted as assumptions. The rigor of the treatment is progressive. A dynamic rather than a static view of geometric figures is given.

Throughout the Algebra and Geometry the concept of functionality is repeatedly introduced. This early emphasis on this notion should make meaningful the Algebra of Grades X and XI, in which equations will be viewed as statements of relationships among variables, rather than as statements of facts respecting constants.

TEACHERS' REFERENCES:

The Teaching of Elementary Mathematics—Godfrey and Siddons (Macmillan Co.).

Diagnostic and Remedial Teaching in Arithmetic—L. J. Brueckner (John C. Winston & Co.).

The Teaching of Elementary Algebra—Durell (Clarke, Irwin & Co.).

The Teaching of Junior High School Mathematics—David Eugene Smith and W. D. Reeve (Ginn & Co.).

The Technique of Teaching Secondary School Mathematics—E. R. Breslich (University of Chicago Press).

Lazerte Diagnostic Problem-Solving Test, Grade VII—M. E. Lazerte (Clarke, Irwin & Co.).

GRADE VII

General Outline.

A.—Tools and Techniques.

1. Review and extension of Grade VI work.
2. Notation and fundamental operations.
3. Decimals and fractions.
4. Percent fraction.
5. Geometric measurement.
6. Graphs.
7. Formulae.

B.—Problem-Solving.

1. Arithmetic of the home: budgeting and household accounts; bills and receipts; banking; interest—percent fraction involving time factor; interest formula; insurance. (Correlation with *Farm and Home Accounting*, where that option is offered.)
2. Arithmetic of business: buying and selling; profit and loss; insurance.
3. Constructional Geometry: simple geometry and measurement, with ruler and compasses; reading and measuring angles; drawing to scale; construction of right angle, rectangle and square; parallel lines and parallelograms; bisection of line and angle; construction of triangles; finding areas and volumes; area and volume formulae.

4. Generalized Arithmetic: general numbers; working with formulae; solving equations.

C.—*Vocabulary and Spelling.*

N.B.—*Parts A, B and C are taught concurrently*, as set forth in the textbook.

TEXTBOOK: *Mathematics for Everyday Use*, Book I.

GRADE VIII

General Outline.

A.—*Tools and Techniques.*

1. Review of fundamentals in Grade VII work.
2. Decimals and fractions.
3. Graphs.
4. Formulas.
5. Proportion.
6. Powers and Roots.
7. Metric measurement.

B.—*Problem-Solving.*

1. Arithmetic of the environment (home, community and industry): taxation; employment; buying fuel; paying for a house; paying taxes; cost of an automobile; instalment buying; cattle accounts; keeping a cash account; and other such practical problems.
(Correlation with *Farm and Home Accounting*, where that option is offered.)
2. Arithmetic of business (applications of percentage): invoices and trade discounts; savings banks and interest (formula and graph for interest); promissory notes; insurance; duties and customs; commission.
3. Constructional Geometry: drawing to scale; measuring areas; similar figures (ratio and proportion); hexagon, and polygons.
4. Generalized Arithmetic: formulas (interest formula); equations; using Algebra and Geometry; graphs (interest graph).

C.—*Vocabulary and Spelling.*

N.B.—*Parts A, B and C are taught concurrently*, as set forth in the textbook.

TEXTBOOK: *Mathematics for Everyday Use*, Book II.

GRADE IX

In this course, the mathematical ideas and techniques of Arithmetic, Algebra and Geometry are developed without separate treatment of these subjects. This integration is more easily effected in the mathematical courses of Grades VII and VIII, while in Grade IX some separation is unavoidable.

In the Algebraic portion of the course it is intended that the student's knowledge of numbers and space relations be used as the basis for formulae and operations, and that every effort be made to recognize that *it is mathematics that is being studied, and not a narrow and abstract set of algebraic rules.*

In the Geometric portion of the course the main principle should be kept in mind. The pupils' experiences and earlier knowledge of space relations and measurements should form the basis. This principle has been recognized in many

courses of study elsewhere. Three stages in the learning of Geometry have been recognized and utilized in the planning of courses:

FIRST STAGE:

The meanings, geometric terms and many of the simple relations between parts of plane figure learned or relearned through observation and intuition. Formal (theoretic) proofs would be omitted in this stage.

SECOND STAGE:

Relations which have been observed and stated are used in proving simple deductions and in verifying well-known methods of construction.

THIRD STAGE:

Formal proofs of most of the important geometrical statements and constructions (propositions) are arranged to form, as nearly as possible, a strictly logical system.

The first and second of the above stages are to receive emphasis. Studies of the properties of lines, angles, triangles, parallels and quadrilaterals are to be made inductively. Constructions are to be practised and relationships stated as a result of observation, measurement and discovery. Beginning with the section on congruence, the student is to be introduced to the use of argument or proof in deducing facts and methods as described in the second stage above.

The third stage involving appreciation of the Euclidean attempt to construct a logical system is not to be attempted in this grade. Thus proofs of congruence by "superposition" and the questionable logic of the "parallel postulate" are replaced by the frank assumption of the important and fundamental truths.

After each principle has been inferred and stated clearly, short and easy applications should be made. In many instances these may be found in the practical every-day world; in others easy numerical exercises will serve.

In the same way arithmetical and geometrical examples may be used as illustrations in Algebra.

The outlines and content of the course are as set forth in the textbook.

TEXTBOOK: "*Mathematics for To-day*"—Lazerte and Betts.

This combined course should receive one period per day throughout the year. The teachers are advised to teach the Algebra portion of the course two or three periods per week, and the Geometry on the remaining days.

GENERAL SCIENCE

INTRODUCTION

The programme of science education for the intermediate school should be considered as an integral part of a science programme that continues throughout the elementary, the intermediate and the high school. Intermediate school instruction in science must be built on the students' experiences of the first six grades. At the same time, it should provide orientation in the special sciences of the high school, and serve as a foundation for further work in those sciences.

The process of thinking from facts to the solution of a problem is the *scientific method*. Techniques are but superficial aspects of education. Neverthe-

less, it is desirable that certain procedures become habitual to the students. The following steps of an experiment, from *Useful Science*, are reproduced with the permission of the publishers, The John C. Winston Co.:

1. Question or Problem: The question that we are asking nature. What we wish to find out.
2. Materials: The things needed to make the experiment.
3. Manipulation or Method: What we shall have to do with the materials to find the answer to the question.
4. Observation: What happened as a result of what was done.
5. Diagram or Sketch: A neat, simple drawing showing the method used to solve the problem.
6. Conclusion: The answer to the question. What our method and our observations have shown to be true.
7. Practical Application: Most of our experiments will have a direct application to everyday life. These applications in many cases we can see for ourselves; in other cases, we may need to have them explained.

Our environment is of two kinds: fixed and changing. Laws in science are relatively fixed and should be learned as quickly and completely as possible. In order to interpret our changing environment, students must be prepared to think, and be able to find the most recent facts on which to base their thinking. They should be able to recognize certain integrating themes; as, space, time, change, adaptation, interrelationships, and variety. Around such themes as these, teachers must correlate the various fields of the special sciences, under the heading "General Science."

Dr. Thomas Briggs states that the method of approach in General Science may well be through the avenue of questioning, or "naive questions":

1. "What is it?"
Satisfies curiosity and leads to more significant questions.
2. "What is it for?"
General Science should not only answer this question, but extend it beyond what the student without direction could possibly perceive.
3. "How does it work?"
Satisfies and extends curiosity so that a desire and need are felt for something more.
4. "Can I work it?"
Psychology has taught us to recognize the satisfaction that comes from activity and from feeling oneself a cause.
5. "What causes it to work?"
Principles should grow out of acquaintance with phenomena. Numerous applications should stamp them into memory and insure wide usefulness.
6. "What further application has this principle than is now known?"
This leads to invention. Such a question is asked only by advanced thinkers.

While learning is unitary, for purposes of clarifying thought we may analyse it into the kinds of changes in students which may be stimulated through science teaching; such as the following:

1. Forming and understanding concepts; as,—
 "Most substances change state by absorbing or releasing energy."
 - a. Concepts should be achieved through a rich experience with the natural phenomena which may contribute to them.
 - b. Experiences should be so motivated that ideas resulting therefrom are continually associated into broader and more meaningful relationships.
2. Development of careful and critical methods of thinking. There are at least six habits which characterize such thinking. They are the following:
 - a. Habit of accuracy in all operations, including calculation, observation, and report.
 - b. Habit of intellectual honesty. This is the habit of sticking to the facts and admitting error when proved.
 - c. Habit of open-mindedness. This means a willingness to consider new facts.
 - d. Habit of criticism, including self-criticism.
 - e. Habit of looking for true cause-and-effect relationships. Here the prevalent superstitions are subjected to searching analysis.
 - f. Habit of suspended judgment. This is looking for all pertinent data before making a decision.
3. Changes in overt behaviour.
 - a. Science education should replace action based on fear of natural processes with action based on understanding.
 - b. Care of trees, forests and grasslands should be promoted by understanding of the *balance of nature* and the consequences of disturbing that balance.

These are but two of the many desirable changes in behaviour that science education can promote.
4. Development of specific attitudes, interests and appreciations. Those which are most valuable will grow only when the teacher plans consciously for their development.
5. Development of an adequate and intelligent philosophy of life. In past times the idea of a flat earth was satisfactory. Later the idea of a spherical earth was needed. Today we must have an idea of a vast universe in order to have an adequate frame of reference for our thinking.

The teacher's function is to plan and direct rich experiences for his students. Through these he may influence the forming of concepts, the thinking that is done, the changes in behaviour, the attitudes and appreciations developed, and the modifications in the student's philosophy of life.

This course should not develop into a note-giving course. The revising committee would discourage the use of manuals, helps, etc., in the hands of the students. Pupil growth through teacher growth is an ideal at which we must aim. Pupils should be encouraged to take inventory of the work accomplished, and set down in sentence form the outstanding fundamental facts deduced from observation, experimentation, and reading. Well planned laboratory work, properly organized field trips, the use of library facilities, and open forum discussions are of far greater importance in the presentation of General Science than are lectures and demonstrations by the teacher.

Instead of going far afield for applications, teachers should emphasize at all times conditions in Alberta, and, if possible, local conditions. The following work plan is submitted to illustrate how local conditions may form the basis for a detailed study. Substitute your own district for Clover Bar in this illustration.

Problem I.

To discover, as definitely as possible, how the settlement of the Clover Bar district has changed the original plant covering of the soil and wild animal life.

EXERCISE 1.

A talk by Mr. R. Phillip Ottewell. Invite Mr. Ottewell, the first man to farm in this district, to come and talk to the class about those early days.

EXERCISE 2.

Prepare a map of the district, on the scale of one-half inch to the mile, and on it mark the areas of unbroken grass and timber lands.

EXERCISE 3.

Estimate carefully the total and relative amounts of such unbroken lands.

EXERCISE 4.

Make a list of the animals and birds that were once common here but are now seldom or never seen.

Problem II.

Have these destructive activities, necessary for the most part, always been so controlled as to result in lasting good to the community?

EXERCISE 1.

Study your own neighbourhood for instances of woods that have been cut down, lands that have been drained, or animals that have destroyed, which you think should have been left undisturbed. Be prepared to give your reasons for so thinking.

EXERCISE 2.

Discuss what our attitude should be, and what our duties are in regard to the conservation of wild flowers, forests, streams, and wild life of this district and of Alberta generally.

Problem III.

To find out definitely the kinds of plants and animals that are now being produced on the farms of this district.

EXERCISE 1.

Each pupil is to report for his father's farm, and for any neighbouring farm from which no child comes to school.

EXERCISE 2.

Using a copy of the same map of the district that was prepared before, indicate thereon the kinds of plants and animals that are raised on each farm. (The varieties of plants and breeds of animals are to be shown.)

EXERCISE 3.

Analyse the results of this survey to discover the most popular varieties and breeds, and account for their popularity.

Problem IV.

To find out the ways in which some of our cultivated plants have been improved by man.

EXERCISE 1.

Study the history of wheat with special attention to Marquis wheat.

EXERCISE 2.

The story of the search for a hardy variety of alfalfa that will thrive in our climate.

EXERCISE 3. A "Potato Day."

Each pupil will bring to school the five best tubers of one variety that he can find at home. These are to be neatly and correctly named. They will be compared and judged.

EXERCISE 4.

Compare field mustard (or other available mustard plant) with the flower stalks of turnip, rape, kohlrabi, cabbage, and cauliflower for characteristics in common.

Problem V.

How has the improvement of our domestic animals been brought about?

EXERCISE 1.

A visit to the farm of Mr. Will S—— who is developing a fine herd of Holsteins. Mr. S—— will tell you something about the origin and history of the breed and how he is trying to improve his herd.

EXERCISE 2.

Trace the improvement of swine from the original wild hog to the highly developed Yorkshire of the present day.

EXERCISE 3. A "Hen Day."

Each pupil brings to school his best hen. The show is staged in the barn, which is cleaned for the purpose. Compare these birds with pictures of the jungle fowl of India, from which they all originated. (See "Fowls of the World"—The National Geographic Magazine.) Arrange the hens according to type, to show how special characteristics have been produced by breeding and selection.

HOW TO USE THIS PROGRAMME IN GENERAL SCIENCE

1.—A Differentiated Programme.

In order to help teachers solve the problem of individual differences in a class of students, this programme has been *differentiated*. A plan of enrichment is developed, by means of which the *minimum essentials* are given for all students, and *enrichment exercises* for the brighter ones; or, with reference to different types of school, minimum essentials for the rural or one-room school in which the teacher is overburdened, and enrichment material for urban schools. *All enrichment material for Grades VII and VIII is marked with the single or the double asterisk.* The single asterisk indicates material that should be chosen first; and the double asterisk, material that may be taken with a student or class having superior ability or special interest in the subject.

Important Notice to Teachers.

More material is listed for Grades VII and VIII than can be taught by any teacher in the three periods a week assigned to General Science.

Teachers should make provision for covering the minimum essentials, and thereafter select carefully some of the enrichment material, as time permits or conditions warrant.

2.—A Two-year Cycle for Rural Schools.

In order that rural teachers may be able to combine grades, a cycle has been arranged for the first two years of this programme.

Section A will be taught both to Grade VII and Grade VIII during the year 1937-38, and each alternate year thereafter.

Section B will be taught both to Grade VII and Grade VIII during the year 1938-39, and each alternate year thereafter.

In urban schools, or in schools where Grade VII and Grade VIII are taught separately, Section A will be taken in Grade VII, and Section B in Grade VIII, every year.

The Grade IX course is to be taken by all Grade IX students every year.

3.—General Features of the Programme.

(i) Each of the sections has been organized in *units* based on a significant *central theme*. Each unit is composed of definite and distinct *elements*, which have the same relation to the unit that the unit bears to the whole section. The themes of Section A are *Water, Air, and Animal Life*; and of Section B are the *Earth's Crust, Plant Life, and the Universe*. It is not intended that these themes should be kept as separate compartments; but rather that they should serve as centres around which a certain amount of factual knowledge, the raw material of thinking, may be organized to show the value and importance of fact relationships in scientific thinking.

(ii) The material is *not* arranged in the order in which it should be presented. It will be necessary for the teacher to rearrange this material to correspond with the seasons of the year. For example, the solid state of water should be studied in the winter season.

(iii) Certain parts of the programme are meant to be studied as a simple survey of the field. These are indicated thus: *Simple Survey*. The remaining parts are to receive a more intensive treatment.

(iv) Certain elements appear twice. For example, the formation of soil by water appears under *Water*, and again under the *Earth's Crust*. Such repetition is marked thus: *See Earth's Crust, B (d)*. Teachers are asked to plan their work in such a way as to avoid this repetition in teaching.

(v) The *preamble* at the beginning of each theme is *not for detailed study*, but to remind teacher and students of certain salient features of the environment.

(vi) Throughout the programme, *notes meant exclusively for the teacher are placed in italics*. Such notes will aid in interpretation, and should be studied carefully.

TEXTBOOKS

Grades VII and VIII.

The textbook to be purchased by all Grade VII and Grade VIII students for use in September, 1937, is *Elementary General Science*, by Limpus and Shore.

Grade IX

No textbook has been authorized for the use of Grade IX students. The textbook in use last year, *A Book of General Science*, by Hilton, is likely to be out of print; but students who can procure a copy may use it as a textbook for the year 1937-38. Otherwise teachers may recommend that their students purchase one of the following books for use as a textbook:

1. *Man's Control of His Environment*, which is the third book of the series, *A Survey of Science*, by Powers, Neuner and Bruner.
2. *Our Environment: How We Use and Control It*, which is the third book of the series, *Our Environment*, by Wood and Carpenter.
3. *Everyday Problems in Science*, by Pieper and Beauchamp.
4. *Useful Science for High School*, by Weed, Rexford and Carroll.

All teachers will realize fully the desirability of having an adequate students' reference library in every school room. By use of such a library the students are stimulated in interest, and are enabled to make reports for submission to the class. They are also able to secure information regarding man's environment which would not otherwise come within their range of experience.

Among the books recommended for the supplementary reading shelf are the following:

1. *Science*, by Davis and Sharpe.
2. *A Survey of Science* (three volumes), by Powers, Neuner and Bruner.
3. *Our Environment* (three volumes), by Carpenter and Wood.
4. *Everyday Problems in Science*, by Pieper and Beauchamp.
5. *Useful Science* (three volumes), by Weed, Rexford and Carroll.
6. *The March of Science* (three volumes), by Hunter and Whitman.
7. *Science Indoors and Out* (two volumes), by Hensley and Patterson.
8. *General Science* (two volumes), by Henry Bowers.

EQUIPMENT FOR GENERAL SCIENCE IN THE INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL

In the following lists, the items of equipment which are absolutely necessary are given in list A. Those of lists B, C, D, E, should be obtained in order, as funds permit.

Quantities shown are for very small groups of students, such as are found in the smallest schools. To permit individual experimental work, larger quantities will have to be supplied.

It must be understood that the prices shown are only approximate, and are subject to a considerable fluctuation.

A.—Minimum Equipment:

Quantity.	Description.	Price.
1	Evaporating dish, 60 mm.	\$.20
1	Alcohol lamp, 6 oz.	.70
1	Bakelite pulley, 5 cm.	.50
1	Glass model lift-pump, 37 cm.	1.90
3 ft.	Rubber tubing, medium wall, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch inside	.75
1 lb.	Glass tubing, 6 mm.	.90
2	Thistle funnels, 10 inch	.36
2	Beakers, 50 cc.	.40
12	Test tubes, $4'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$	.35
1	Rubber stopper, solid, to fit test tubes	.07
12	Cork stopper, solid, to fit test tubes	.10
1	Rubber stopper, 1-hole, to fit test tubes	.07
1	Rubber stopper, 2-hole, to fit test tubes	.07
1	Retort stand, with 2 rings	1.25
1	Steel magnet, permanent, 5-inch	.40
1	5-inch square of wire gauze	.12
1	Cylindrical graduate flask, 100 cc.	1.20
1	Test-tube clamp, 6 in.	.12
2	Florence flasks, flat bottom, 500 cc.	.60
1	Rubber stopper, to fit florence flask, solid	.07
1	Rubber stopper, to fit florence flask, 2-hole	.07
2	Cork stoppers, to fit florence flask, solid	.03
10 oz.	Potassium chlorate	.40
2 oz.	Manganese dioxide	.20
1 lb.	Marble chips	.30
12 oz.	Sulphuric acid	.75
1	Toy electric motor	2.35

B.—

1	Combined pressure and vacuum pump, hand size	6.00
1 ft.	Heavy rubber tubing, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch inside	.40
1	Student's balance, simple beam type	10.00
1	Set of weights	3.00
1	Additional reference books.	

C.—

1	Electric switch	.40
1	Toy steam engine	1.50
1	Metre stick	.40
1	Torricellian tube, with 3 lbs. mercury	8.50
1	Additional reference book.	

D.—

Electroplating apparatus, complete	3.60
Set of fuses	.50
Toy dynamo	2.50

Pneumatic trough	.80
Set of capillary tubes	.95
Iron filings	.20
Convection current apparatus	1.20
Filter paper	.20
Thermometer, Fahrenheit-Centigrade	3.50
Additional reference book.	

E.—

Telegraph key and sounder	5.00
Aquarium	4.00
Inclined plane	1.50

F.—

Hygrometer	6.00
Rheostat	2.00
Horse-shoe electro-magnet	1.50

G.—

Compound microscope	\$30 to \$100
---------------------------	---------------

Supplies obtainable locally:

½ quart methyl hydrate (wood alcohol)	\$.60
1 dry-cell battery	.40
3 toy balloons	.10
3 six-inch candles	.06
1 small cube clothes bluing	.05
3 half-pint clear heavy-glass tumblers	.15
3 oz. formaldehyde	.15

Equipment which may be borrowed:

Block and tackle; screw-jack; mouth organ; gasoline lamp; coal oil mantle lamp; flashlight; large clear-glass bowl; farm milking pail.

Obtainable without cost:

Worn-out electric light bulb, old and new fuse, iron filings, seeds of oats, wheat, etc., fine and coarse sand, wooden spools, beef bladder, crochet sleeve for thermometer in making hygrometer, dried prunes for osmosis.

Many governmental agencies and industrial concerns have published very attractive booklets and have prepared excellent displays showing various products in different stages of manufacture. Such materials are usually distributed free of charge, and it is suggested that teachers write or have pupils do so, requesting these. The address of a Canadian company manufacturing any article will be supplied by the Commercial Intelligence Service, Department of Trade and Commerce, Ottawa. Arrangements are also being made to acquaint teachers with the name of companies whose display and advertising materials have been found useful in science teaching.

SECTION A

THEME I: WATER—THE LIQUID PORTION OF OUR PLANET

Preamble:

Water is a substance intimately bound up with our existence and with the existence of all plants and animals.

- a. It covers three-quarters of the surface of the globe.
- b. It makes up four-fifths of the weight of our soft tissues.
- c. Without water there could be no plants; hence no vegetables or fruits; no animals and no food for man.
- d. Without water there would be no rainy days, no snow storms, no coasting or skating, no bathing, swimming or sailing, and no water to drink.

A.—Nature and Behaviour of Water (Simple Survey).

- a. Forms of water.
 1. Liquid—fog, mist, clouds, dew, whitish portion of vapor from boiling water and of breath in cold weather.
 2. Solid—ice, snow, hoar frost.
 3. Gas—colorless gas in the air and in the breath before it is cooled; the invisible part of vapor.
- b. Effects of solidification of water on plant and animal life.

Temperature falls below that point so important to plants and animals, the freezing point of water. This liquid makes up a large percentage of the composition of all living things and is the environment of many plant and animal forms. (See Units G and H.)

 1. Ground is frozen; water is available in very limited quantities to plant roots.
 2. Dwellers in the soil, like earthworms and certain larvae, are unable to move about and obtain their food.
 3. Grass and other low-growing vegetation is inaccessible to wild animals for food.
 4. Tree leaves, which during the summer sustained great insect populations, have withered and fallen.
 5. Birds in whose diets insects were an important item, find their food supply sharply curtailed by the first frosts.
 6. Snow acts as a blanket:
 - (a) Prevents frost from penetrating too deeply into soil.
 - (b) Prevents alternate thawing and freezing of ground in southern Alberta.
 - (c) Conserves moisture of winter and makes it available in the spring for plant growth.
 7. Water overflows on soil, freezes, kills many perennials. Need for good drainage.
- c. Maximum density of water, 4 degrees Centigrade. Effect on aquatic plant and animal life.
- d. Demonstrations:—Effects of heating water; relation of volume to temperature; expansion in freezing; distillation of water.

B.—Uses of Water in the Home (Simple Survey).

- a. For drinking.
 1. Impurities in water—vegetable life, minerals, bacteria.
 2. Purification—
 - (a) Sedimentation—suspended matter settles. If matter is dissolved in water, settling does not purify water.
 - (b) Aeration—by winds, waterfalls or fountains.
 - (c) Filtration—use of gravel, charcoal and sand beds.
 - (d) Artificial—
 - (1) Distillation or boiling.
 - * (2) Chemical treatment—alum, liquid chlorine, chloride of lime, super and de-chlorination.
 - ** (3) Electrical treatment—heavy discharges of electricity in the water in order to furnish oxygen.
- b. In cooking.
 1. Effect of boiling water on digestibility of starchy foods.
 2. Softening the cellulose of vegetables by boiling water.
 3. Removal of soluble mineral salts.
- c. In preserving food.
 1. By means of ice.
 2. Cold-pack canning.
 3. In drying and "curing" with salts, water is withdrawn.
- d. In cleaning.
 1. Water as a solvent for soap.
 - * 2. Hard and soft waters; washing soda and borax as water softeners; effect of boiling on temporary hardness.
 3. Rinsing.
- e. Removal of wastes.

There are several ways of disposing of wastes: earth, air, water, fire, and fungi.

The wastes of a household are of two kinds:

 - (i) Garbage—solids.
 - (ii) Sewage—liquids.
 1. Sewerage system—disposes of the fouled waters from the community.
 2. Septic tank—in isolated houses.
 3. Beneficial bacteria.
- *f. As a heating medium.
 1. Hot water systems—convection currents.
 2. Steam systems.
 3. Advantages and disadvantages of hot water and steam heating systems.
- g. In humidification.
 1. Demonstration of the presence of water vapor in air.
 2. Effect of dry air on health, furniture and woodwork.
 - * 3. Meaning of relative humidity.
 - * 4. Measurement of relative humidity by wet-and-dry-bulb hygrometer.
 - ** 5. Air conditioning—meaning only.

C.—Use of Water in the Community (Simple Survey).

- a. Flushing streets.
- b. Watering gardens, flower beds, and fields—how applied in each case.
- c. Careless use of water.
 1. Alkali in the soil.
 2. Water-logged soils.
 3. Plants grow to leaf when over-watered; reduction in the number of flowers; late flowering; leaves especially subject to blights, e.g., Asters.
- d. Public baths and swimming pools.
- e. Provision of drinking water.
 1. Sources—rain, lakes, rivers, springs, shallow wells, deep wells, artesian wells.
 2. Detailed study of *one* type of purification. (See Unit B, (a).)
 3. Methods of distribution.
 - (a) Source of pressure—reservoirs, stand pipes, pumps.
 - (b) Aqueducts, city mains—evolution from log pipes to stave pipes to cast-iron pipes.
 - (c) Plumbing—open plumbing desirable; proper traps essential.
 - * (d) Demonstration of *one* type of water supply system with model apparatus.
- *f. Fire-fighting—pressure is essential.
 1. Hydrants with frost casings are placed at street corners.
 2. Sprinkler systems.
- **g. Payment for water by citizens.
 1. Water meters; flat rate, sliding scale.
 2. Restrictions placed on the use of water.

D.—Use of Water in Industry (Simple Survey).

- a. In producing steam for power plants.
- b. In dyeing and bleaching, tanning leather, washing wool.
- c. Local uses—bakeries, laundries, dairies, packing plants, manufacturing beverages as soft drinks.
- d. Hydro-electric power.
- *e. Irrigation in Alberta. (See Unit C, (b) and (c).)
- *f. Mining operations—dredging, washing; salt wells.
- *g. Great chemical industries.
- **h. In pulp and paper manufacture.
 1. Transport fine pulp fibres.
 2. Remove impurities.
 3. Bring bleaching materials in close contact with pulp.

E.—Water and Transportation (Simple Survey).

- a. Relative cheapness of carriage by water.
- b. Rivers, canals, lakes, and seas in relation to transportation.
- c. Use of snow in logging operations, sleighing, snow-shoeing, skiing.

F.—Formation and Transportation of Soil by Water

(See Section B, Earth's Crust, Unit C.)

- a. Water vapor in air a factor in weathering of rocks.
- b. Weathering of rocks by water containing carbon dioxide.
- c. Erosion by water carrying sand and pebbles.
- d. Rocks split by the freezing of water in crevices.
- e. Formation of deltas—at the mouths of the Mackenzie, Nile, and Mississippi rivers.
- **f. Denudation during glacial epoch.
- **g. Soil carried during the ice age.

G.—Plant Life and Water—Water by dissolving solids, makes them usable.

- a. Experiment to determine the percentage of the weight of plants made up by water.
- b. Conveyance of necessary nutrient salts by soil water to roots:
 - 1. Ascent of water in soil—capillarity. Experiment.
 - 2. Absorption of solution by root hairs—osmosis. Experiment.
 - *3. Tendency of roots to grow towards water—hydrotropism.
- c. Water gives plants turgor (rigidity). Experiment to show wilting.
- d. Rainfall a factor in determining the type of vegetation in any region—wet and dry region plant societies.
- e. Water as a habitat for plants:
 - 1. Microscopic green plants as basis of existence of purely aquatic animals.
 - *2. Other important aquatic plants—seaweed, paddy rice.
 - **3. Formation of peat bogs.

H.—Animal Life and Water (Simple Survey).

- a. Eighty per cent. of soft tissues of animals is water.
- *b. Necessity of water for digestion and absorption of food.
- *c. Elimination of water by kidneys, skin and lungs.
- d. Water as a habitat for animals: fisheries, whaling, pearl fishing. Fur bearers—seal, beaver, muskrat, otter; water birds and birds of the water's edge—ducks, gulls, kingfisher, bittern.
- **e. How certain animals obtain oxygen under water—fish, tadpole, eel, oyster.

I.—Influence of Water on Climate.

- a. The proximity of large bodies of water tends to prevent higher temperatures in summer and low temperatures in winter.
- b. Land and sea breezes and the monsoons.
- c. Climatic effects produced by ocean currents—Gulf Stream, Labrador Current, Japan Current.
- *d. Water has a very high specific heat.
- **e. Water vapor in the form of cloud, acts as a blanket in preventing rapid loss of heat from earth's surface.

J.—The Water Cycle.

- a. The atmosphere receives water vapor and gives it back in a variety of ways.
 1. How the atmosphere receives water.
 - (a) Evaporation from all surfaces of bodies of water; from wet rocks and soil; from snow and ice.
 - (b) Moisture given off from the burning of fuels, by the breathing of animals; from trees and other plants.
 2. How the atmosphere returns water.
 - (a) Condensation and formation of rain, dew drops, fog.
 - (b) If temperature is very low, hoar frost, snow, and hail are formed.
- b. This return of the water makes the earth moist; fills rivers and ponds; supplies animals and plants with the necessary water. Thus there is on the earth a never-ending cycle of water from solid or liquid to gas and back again from gas to liquid or solid.

****K.—Water in Relation to History (Simple Survey).**

- a. Early civilization in the valley of Tigrus-Euphrates and in the Nile delta.
 1. Fertility of land made for relatively high standard of living a condition conducive to cultural development.
 2. Necessity for irrigation provided men with a training in the art of living together.
 3. Mensuration and geometry born of need for measurement of land holdings continuously changing in size because of floods.
- b. Caravan routes and settlements in Eastern countries determined by wells and oases.
- c. Influence of waterways on exploration and settlement.
 1. Search for a sea route to the East resulted in the discovery of the New World.
 2. Routes important in exploration and settlement in North America—St. Lawrence, Great Lakes, Mississippi-Missouri System, Hudson's Bay-Lake Winnipeg-Red River System, Mackenzie River.
- d. Nations with a history largely influenced by their maritime location: Phoenicians; Great Britain; Holland; and Scandinavian countries.
- e. Canals.
 1. The Suez Canal—strategic value to Britain.
 2. The Panama Canal—strategic value to the United States.
- f. Fisheries.
 1. The Washington Treaty of 1871.
 2. The Halibut Treaty, May 9, 1930; the Sockeye Salmon Treaty, May 29, 1930. These treaties with the United States marked a step in the constitutional development of Canada.

THEME II: AIR—THE EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE.

Preamble:

Air is that invisible substance that fills the space between the earth and the distant blue of the heavens; that is found dissolved in water wherever found in nature, and in the spaces among soil and rock particles in the earth's crust.

- a. It extends outward to great distances from the earth. We are concerned chiefly with the layer extending about six miles above the earth.
- b. It supports the beating wings of birds and the soaring wings of planes and gliders; through it floats the lighter-than-air ship.
- c. As wind, it comes snow-laden during our blizzards, dust-laden during our dust storms, and sand-laden over deserts. We find it in the Trade Winds and in the Monsoons.
- d. As moving currents of air, it drives sailing vessels through water; operates the windmill that pumps our water; ventilates and heats our homes.
- e. As storms, cyclones and tornadoes, it causes great damage on both land and sea.
- f. Packing air into closed vessels has given power to operate such things as car brakes, submarines, and torpedoes.
- g. Removal of air from closed vessels has given us such useful things as vacuum bottles, electric lamps, and radio tubes.
- h. Many vital chemical processes depend upon it. Breathing animals take oxygen from the air.
- i. Plants take carbon from the air. Without air there would be no plants; nor would there be animals.
- j. Air carries moisture for rain and snow needed by living things.
- k. Many plants are dependent on wind for pollination.
- l. Wind assists in the dispersal of seeds, spores, etc.
- m. Winds increase the rate of evaporation, and thus the plant life of regions of constant strong winds is affected.

A.—Composition of Air.

- a. Mixture of gases—principally oxygen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide and water vapour.
- b. Approximate proportions of each.

B.—Occurrence.

- a. Above the earth's surface.
 1. Nature of the troposphere and the stratosphere.
- b. In water.
 1. Experiment to show that air is found in unboiled water.
 2. Review purification of water by aeration.
 - *3. Review breathing of under-water animals.
- c. In soil.
 1. Experiment to show that air is found in soil.
 2. Living things in soil that use air—earthworms, moles, cutworms, roots and stems (tuber of potato) of plants.
 - *3. Bacteria in the soil that "fix" nitrogen of the air for the use of plants.

C.—What Makes the Air Useful to Man?

- a. Air occupies space.
 1. Experiment.
 2. Applications—the caisson, diving bell.

b. Air has weight.

1. Experiment.
2. *Information.*—At sea level about thirteen cubic feet of air weighs one pound. At higher altitudes this volume of air would weigh less and less. Winds are destructive because air has weight—sand blast. Air pressure at the earth's surface is due to the weight of all the air above. Normal air pressure is 14.7 pounds per square inch. This great force is necessary to hold us together because the fluids within us are pressing outwards with an equal pressure.
3. Applications—self-filling pen, bicycle pump, lift pump, force pump, siphon, vacuum sweeper, drinking through a straw, lungs in breathing, air brakes, riveters' hammer, compressed air drill, parachute.

NOTE.—Since air has weight and occupies space, it can be classified as matter.

c. Air is heavier than some, and lighter than other gases.

- *1. Experiments—fill soap bubbles or small balloons with hydrogen; show that carbon dioxide gas is found chiefly near the floor of the school room.
2. Applications—balloons filled with hydrogen or helium, carbon tetrachloride fire extinguisher.

d. Air contains oxygen.

1. Experiment. Oxygen is active.
2. Oxygen makes a fire burn. Rapid oxidation produces light.
3. Oxygen allows us to oxidize food substances in the body, thus releasing energy.
4. Slow oxidation is seen in the drying of paint and varnish.
5. In an atmosphere of pure oxygen, fire would be uncontrolled.
6. Applications.
 - (a) Homes, factories, trains, steamships, automobiles, and airplanes are warmed or driven by oxidation.
 - * (b) Gunpowder, nitroglycerine, TNT used in shells; nitro-cellulose used in smokeless powder.
 - * (c) Oxygen administered in pulmonary diseases.

e. Air contains nitrogen.

1. Experiment. Nitrogen is inert.
2. Nitrogen regulates the speed of combustion by diluting oxygen.
3. Nitrogen is used to fill electric light globes.
- *4. Outside of the foregoing, the nitrogen of the air is of little use while in the free state. Fixation of the nitrogen in the soil air by means of bacteria.

f. Air contains carbon dioxide.

1. Experiment using fresh limewater.
2. Water and carbon dioxide are the two principal raw materials used by plants in manufacturing their foods.
3. Carbon for building tissue in plants and animals is derived from the carbon dioxide of the atmosphere.
4. All the carbon of our coals, gasoline, coal oil, and natural gas, as well as in the huge beds of limestone, has been extracted from the carbon dioxide of the air.

- g. Air contains water vapour. (See Theme I, Unit B, g, 1.)
1. Formation of clouds, rain, dew (saturation or dew-point), fog, hoar frost.
 2. Relation of humidity of air to health and comfort.

D.—Some Economic Problems (Simple Survey).

- a. Rusting of metals. Iron rusts (oxidizes) in air (oxygen) and moisture.
Control. Exposed surfaces of iron are covered with material which keeps the air from them:
1. A "tin" can is iron with a thin wash of tin.
 2. Steel bridges preserved by paint.
 3. Iron is dipped into molten zinc (galvanized iron).
- b. Air contains dust particles.
1. Sources of dust in air—burning soft coal, over-cultivation of soil, volcanic explosions, sweeping, dusting.
 2. Control—watering wagon, garden hose, vacuum cleaner, air conditioners, furniture oil for dusting, gauze masks, suitable cultivation of land.
- c. Source of oxygen when man breathes (i) at high altitudes, (ii) in a smoke-filled room, (iii) under water.
- d. Fire.
1. Relation of use of fire to advance in civilization.
 2. Uses of fire to man—warmth, preparation of food, heating liquids, generating steam, distillation, melting metals.
 - *3. Relation of air and temperature to combustion.
 - (a) Air (oxygen), heat, and a substance combustible at ordinary temperatures are necessary to start combustion.
 - (b) Kindling temperatures of two or more substances (sulphur, wood, coal).
 4. Products of combustion—water and carbon dioxide.
 - *5. Control of fire.
 - (a) Causes of fires—carelessness a basic factor.
 - (b) How to fight fires.
 - (1) Use and operation of fire extinguishers.
 - (2) How to extinguish fires—use of water, or sand, or damp blankets.
 - (3) How to call a fire department.
 - (4) What to do when one's clothing catches fire.
 - (5) How to set a back-fire when fighting a bush or prairie fire.

E.—Effect of Heat on the Volume of Air (Gases).

- a. Temperature—how determined.
- b. Demonstrations to show that air expands when heated and contracts when cooled.
- c. Experiment to show that hot air rises and cold air sinks—convection current.
- d. Applications—winds; bursting of automobile tires on very hot days; making "angel-food" cake; yeast making bread rise; "puff paste" rolled and folded at freezing temperatures and then baked in a hot oven; fire balloon.

F.—Weather.

- a. Distinguish temperature and heat; weather and climate.
- b. Weather processes are caused by heat from the sun.
- c. General configuration of the globe.
 1. Tropics—immense bodies of water—evaporation.
 2. Polar regions—ice, snow, and cold. The condenser which converts the water vapour of the air into rain or snow.
- d. That water may be distributed, there are regions of “high pressure” and “low pressure” which produce the winds that distribute the moisture.
- e. Moisture is taken out of the air by cooling it.
 1. Relation between altitude and temperature.
 2. Effect of expansion on the temperature of air.
 3. Air cooled by expansion until saturation point is reached and vapour appears as a cloud.
- f. In nature.
 1. Mountains cause air to rise—the chinook wind.
 2. Away from mountains, the obstacle to force ascension is the high pressure.
- g. How atmospheric pressure is measured—the barometer.
- h. Systems of high and low pressures travel over the earth’s surface. Their direction may be charted.
 1. Isobars and isotherms.
 2. Study of a weather chart.
- *i. Weather and climate in relation to—
 1. Principal crops.
 2. Leading industries.
 3. Common occupations (local situations).
- *j. Sea breezes and land breezes—explanation.
- **k. The work accomplished by meteorological stations.
 1. Daily records of (i) the air pressure; (ii) the humidity; (iii) temperature; (iv) direction of winds; (v) speed of winds; (vi) cloud formations.
 2. Description of the instruments used.

THEME III: ANIMAL LIFE—OUR FELLOW INHABITANTS OF THE EARTH.

A.—A Study of Living Things.

- a. All living things are either plants or animals.
- b. Differences between living and non-living things.
 1. Living things feed—changes that take place in this food.
 2. All living things breathe.
 3. Living things can reproduce.
 4. Living things possess the power of growth; few non-living things do.
 5. Living things are affected by what there is around them.
- c. Differences between plants and animals.
 1. They require different kinds of food.

2. (a) Living parts of all animals and plants made up of protoplasm—jelly-like or hardened by minerals into bone.
- (b) Protoplasm divided up into small compartments called cells.
- (c) Plant cells have rigid walls; whereas animal cells do not.
3. The body of an animal usually has a definite size and shape, whereas a plant branches so that its shape is constantly changing. Compare a horse with a tree.
- d. Interdependency of living things.
 1. *Animals which depend upon plant food are limited in their distribution to the places in which grow the kinds of plants they are adapted to use as food.*
 - (a) Grazing animals—cattle, horses, sheep, live on grass and other green food; and inhabit the grassy plains of the world.
 - (b) Browsing animals—deer, moose, giraffe, live partly on the leaves and twigs of trees.
 - (c) Rodents or gnawing animals—porcupine, rabbit, squirrel, beaver, gopher, muskrat, are adapted to living in almost every kind of environment from the water to the desert.
 - (d) Insects that live on plants.
 - (1) Chewing insects—grasshopper, larva of cabbage white butterfly.
 - (2) Sucking insects—aphids, scale insects, adult butterfly.
 - (e) Birds that live entirely or in part on plants—ducks, geese, sparrows, junco, pigeons.
 2. *Flesh-eating animals are adapted by means of claws and specially developed teeth for securing food. The distribution of the flesh-eaters is largely fixed by the distribution of the animals upon which they feed.*
 - (a) Dogs, cats, lions, tigers, bears, coyotes, weasel, lynx, mink.
 - (1) Few of these animals have been tamed except the dog and cat.
 - (2) Men have always hunted the flesh-eating animals (a) to protect themselves; (b) to protect their domesticated animals; (c) for their furs and hides; (d) as food.
 - (b) Flesh-eating birds—owls, hawks, eagles, vultures.
All are equipped with talons on the toes for seizing prey, and have beaks adapted for seizing and tearing the prey.

B.—How Various Factors Affect the Animal Population.

- a. The number of any given species in any area depends upon factors such as food, climatic and weather conditions, disease, parasitism, and enemies.
- b. Man invades virgin territory.
 1. Demand for furs—depletion of beaver, buffalo.
 2. Forests disappear and with them the birds and mammals whose home they were.
 3. Swamps in which wild ducks found their food are drained.
 4. Removal of trees and cultivation of land cause rivers and streams to decrease in flow and even to dry up. Effect on animal life in and around such water.
 5. Many harmful animals introduced.
 - (a) Cabbage butterfly, corn borer, warble fly.

- (b) Starling, house sparrow.
- (c) Introduction of rabbits to Australia in 1864. They became a pest
- (d) Introduction of mongoose from India to Jamaica.
 - (1) Rats almost disappeared. The mongoose multiplied and turned to young pigs, lambs, pups, kittens, frogs, poultry and birds for food.
 - (2) As frogs, toads, birds diminished in number, insects increased.
 - (3) Mongoose attacked by ticks, which weakened its vitality and reduced its rate of reproduction.
- (e) St. Helena, in 1513, was a forested island. Portugese brought in goats for the sake of their milk. Within a hundred years the island was almost treeless because of the destruction of the undergrowth. Soil was washed away from rocky slopes.

C.—How Animal Life Has Affected Our Lives (Simple Survey).

- a. The hoofed animals—horse, pig, deer, antelope, moose, sheep, ox, llama, elephant, buffalo, goat, camel, cow.
 - 1. Feet provided with hoofs.
 - 2. All live chiefly on vegetation.
 - 3. Usually live together in herds. They depend chiefly on massing or speed to protect themselves against enemies.
 - 4. Domestication of many of these animals.
 - (a) Less dangerous to hunt than animals that eat flesh.
 - (b) Easily herded together and moved from place to place.
 - (c) Constant supply of meat, milk, skins; also beasts of burden for transportation of goods and cultivation of land.
 - (d) They grow rapidly into adults; produce such products as milk and meat; maintain the world's supply of food.
 - (e) Sheep, goat, camel, and alpaca furnish fibers used in world's clothing.
 - (f) Industry dependent on domesticated animals—packing plants, shoe manufacture, woolen mills.
 - (g) A study of the common breeds of cattle, their origin and use:—Jersey, Holstein, Ayrshire, Guernsey, Shorthorn, Hereford, Aberdeen Angus.
 - (h) The difference between the dairy type and the beef type of cattle.
 - * (i) The meaning of "pedigreed stock".
 - ** (j) A similar study of (i) horses, (ii) sheep, (iii) hogs.
- b. The claw animals—dog, cat, lion, bear, etc.
 - 1. Important only as a source of furs.
 - 2. Very few domesticated.
 - 3. Dangerous to life in jungles, wilds, and timberland.
- c. Other mammals.
 - 1. Mammals important in northern Alberta because of their fur: mink, fox, wolf, skunk, muskrat, beaver, otter, rabbit, weasel, etc.
 - *2. An elementary study of how animals are trapped, skinned, and the skins preserved.
 - *3. Alberta's place in world trade as a producer of furs.
 - **4. Fur farming in Alberta.

d. Birds.

1. Wild birds most difficult of all animals to capture.
2. Domestication of birds—the hen.

A study of the common breeds of hens, their origin, and use.

(a) Utility breeds (dual purpose)—Barred Rocks, White Wyandottes, Rhode Island Reds, Chanticleer, Buff Orpingtons, Light Sussex.

(b) Egg breeds—White Leghorns, Minorcas.

3. Beneficial and harmful birds.

e. Insects.

1. Insects as disease carriers—house fly, mosquito, flea, louse.
2. Insects that attack farm and garden crops—saw fly, cutworms, Colorado beetle, cabbage-white butterfly, wireworms, grasshoppers, May beetle.
3. Insects that attack trees and shrubs—forest-tent caterpillar, caragana blister beetle, plant lice, wood-borers. Examine the goldenrod, rose, or willow for galls.
4. Insects that destroy stored food, books and clothing—meal-worms, larder beetles, ants, clothes moths, cockroach, fish moth.
5. Insects injurious to farm animals—botfly, blowfly, warble fly. (25% of all hides tanned in Canada are injured by this fly.)
6. Insects useful to man.
 - (a) Two insects that have been tamed—honey bee and silk moth.
 - (b) Ladybird beetles—feed on plant lice, the eggs and young larvae of the Colorado beetle, and scale insects.
 - (c) Ground beetles—feed upon cutworms, wireworms, and eggs of grasshoppers.
 - (d) Dragon flies and damsel flies—feed upon flies and mosquitoes.
 - (e) Wasps—feed upon house flies and their relatives.
 - (f) Ichneumon flies—lay eggs in bodies of caterpillars; resulting grub eats the body of the host.
 - (g) Tachina fly—lays eggs on cutworms, army worms, young grasshoppers, and larvae (grubs) of leaf-eating beetles.
 - (h) Study the life history of (i) the grasshopper, (ii) the cabbage-white butterfly.

D.—Parental Care of Animals (Simple Survey).

- a. Single-celled animals—amoeba. No period of dependency.
- b. Amphibians and fishes—lay eggs in sheltered places, and in such places and under such circumstances that the young will be near a supply of natural food. Parents know nothing of their fate.
- c. Insects—parental provision of bees, ants, parasitic insects, wasps.
- d. Snakes—eggs guarded, but hatched by heat of the sun. The eggs of some snakes are hatched in the body of the parent. The young of most rattle-snakes are born in this way.
- e. Birds.
 1. Nesting habits—eggs shaped to roll in circles.
 2. Protective coloration in eggs and young.
 3. Incubation.

4. Function of the yolk of the egg—food for young.
 5. Young fed and defended.
- f. Mammals.
1. Nourished during gestation by the blood stream of the mother.
 2. Suckled by mother after birth.
 - *3. Kangaroo—helpless little ones carried in a pouch and nourished by the mother.

Note the relationship between the number of young produced and the care given by the parents in each of the foregoing cases.

E.—How Animals Meet Environmental Changes of Heat and Cold.

- a. Warm-blooded and cold-blooded animals—birds and fish.
- b. Cold-blooded animals in winter seek a retreat which remains above freezing point.
 1. Water animals, such as fish, clams, etc., are safe because water near the bottom of lakes, streams, and ponds never cools below that critical point. (See I, A, c.)
 2. Snakes, lizards, turtles, frogs, newts, earthworms bury themselves in crevices in earth or in the mud of ponds below the frost line.
 - *3. Snails seek some sheltered place and form a partition across the opening of the shell; some, as many as six of these with intervening air spaces. Tiny breathing pores are left. (Compare with double doors and windows on a house.)
- c. Warm-blooded animals.
 1. The body temperature of man is approximately 98.6°F.; of birds as high as 112°F.
 2. This temperature is maintained by slow-burning in our bodies; the resulting loss is made good by food.
 3. Hibernation.
 - (a) Difference between internal and external temperature should be as narrow as possible.
 - (b) Movement should be reduced to the least possible.
 - (c) How accomplished.
 - (1) Reduction in the rate of heart-beat.
 - (2) Less tissue consumed.
 - (3) Fall in body temperature—bats.
 - (4) Store of body fat—ground hog, skunk, bear (only if weather is cold and food scarce).
 - (5) Hair or fur becomes longer and thicker.
 - (6) Food stored—chipmunks and squirrels.

F.—How Animals Meet Environmental Changes in the Food Supply.

- a. Migration.
 - **1. Insects. (a) Migratory locust, in drier parts of Africa and West Asia;
 - (b) butterflies—monarch spends the winter south of the Gulf States and California, returning north in the spring. The painted lady in the spring crosses the Sahara, traverses the Mediterranean Sea and reaches north Europe in June and July. The cabbage butterfly is a migrant

in Europe in July; from the islands in the Baltic they fly over Germany like clouds of snowflakes.

2. Birds—leave when food gets scarce; forced north again by over-crowded conditions in the south.

(a) Some migrate by day—ducks and geese. Swallows, hawks, night-hawks, and chimney swifts can migrate and feed together (catch food on the wing).

(b) Some migrate by night—robin, meadowlark, shore birds, warblers, and orioles must utilize the day-light hours to seek food to repair muscular exhaustion.

(c) Migration from north regions of Canada—snowflake, arctic owl.

****G.—Elementary Study of Some Animals.**

All animals can be placed in two large groups—animals with backbones, and animals without backbones.

- a. The Amoeba.

Structure, movement, feeding, breathing, reproduction.

- b. The Earthworm.

Structure, movement, feeding, breathing, reproduction.

- c. The Grasshopper.

Structure, movement, feeding, breathing, reproduction.

- d. The Bee as a social insect. Division of labour in the hive.

- e. Fish.

Shape, movement, feeding, breathing, reproduction.

- f. Frog.

Life history, movement, breathing.

- g. Bird.

Classification, breathing, feathers, adaptations to mode of living (feet, bills, relation of length of neck to length of legs in wading birds).

- h. A study of the teeth of animals; meat teeth, grass teeth, and wood teeth.

OBSERVATIONAL WORK

A.—Fall.

1. Bird life.
2. Cocoons. Make a collection.
3. Temperature records.
4. Wind directions: relation to temperature and velocity changes.
5. Grasshoppers.
6. Frost and its effects.
7. Cloud formations.
8. Air pressure changes—barometer and daily newspaper reports.
9. Fire risks—prairie and bush fires.
10. Conservation as applied to water power, bird life, food.

B.—Winter.

1. Animal tracks in the snow.
2. The Chinook winds.

3. Winter birds.
4. Uses for solid water.
5. Relative humidity of the air, moist or dry.
6. How animals protect themselves against cold weather.
7. Sky phenomena—sun dogs, ring around the moon, northern lights.
8. Prevailing winds.
9. Hoar frost on trees, wires, etc.
10. Effect of pressure on the freezing point of water; icy roads.

C.—Spring.

1. Arrival of birds.
2. Pond life—frogs, toads, larvae of mosquito.
3. Floods—rivers, creeks, etc.
4. Clean-up week.
5. Preservation of wood and iron by the use of paint, varnish, and creosote.
6. Emerging of moths from cocoons.
7. Nest building of birds.
8. Observe bees and ants at work.
9. Make a collection of butterflies.
10. Drainage problems in the locality.

SECTION B

THEME I: THE EARTH'S CRUST—EARTH SCIENCE

Preamble:

The solid earth, like the air and ocean, is of great importance to man. It furnishes him with a home. It is almost everywhere covered with a mantle of soil, in which food-plants and other vegetation grow. Everywhere beneath the soil is found solid bed-rock, from which many valuable mineral substances are obtained.

- a. Indications that the earth's interior is highly heated: Hot springs; volcanoes erupt melted rock; mines show an increase in temperature of about 1°F. for every 50 or 60 feet of descent.
- b. Indications that the interior of the earth is solid: If it were liquid there would be tides in it; the behavior of the earth toward other spheres is that of a solid; earthquake shocks in Japan have been measured by delicate instruments in England, and the time of passage and nature of the record received indicate a solid interior; the interior is prevented from melting by the tremendous weight, or pressure, of the rocks that rest upon it.

A.—Irregularities of the Earth's Crust (Simple Survey).

- a. The earth's crust is in slow movement; the outlines of the lands and oceans are ever varying.
 1. As the interior of the earth cools and shrinks, the outer crust wrinkles, causing some parts to rise, and others to settle.
 2. This has caused continental elevations and oceanic basins; and on both of these, mountain chains and volcanoes.

3. The average depth of the ocean is about five times the average height of the land.
- b. The continents.
 1. Meaning of the terms continent, continental shelf, continental slope.
 2. They consist of plains, plateaus, and mountains.
 3. They owe their outline to mountain skeletons connected by plains and plateaus.
 4. Relation of continent forms to man.
 - (a) Separation of the continents has interfered with the spread of man.
 - (b) The average elevation of the land not too high and cold, and is thus able to support a dense population.
 - (c) An irregular coast line favours navigation.
 5. The continents are clustered around the north polar regions with tongues projecting southward.
 6. The continents are characteristically triangular in shape, and taper southward.
- c. The oceans.
 1. Ocean water is centered around the south polar region, with triangular tongues projecting northward between the continents.
 2. Relation of the oceans to man.
 - (a) As a source of food; e.g., fishes and other valuable animals.
 - (b) As the route and highway of navigation.
 - (c) As a source of water vapour.
 - (d) In modifying climate.
- d. Man uses these irregularities.
 1. Steeper hills and mountain sides still forested—lumbering industry.
 2. Narrow valleys—waterfalls, mills, hydroelectric power, mining.
 3. Open plains and low hills—everywhere inhabited.

***B.—Rocks of the Earth's Crust (Simple Survey).**

- a. Sedimentary rocks.
 1. Nature of sedimentary rocks—in layers or strata.
 2. Origin.
 - (a) Fragmental rocks—gravel beds, conglomerates, sand beds, shale.
 - (b) Chemically formed rocks—stalactite, salt, gypsum.
 - (c) Organic rocks—most limestones, coal (bituminous, lignite, peat).
 3. How formed.
 - (a) Assorting power of waves and currents.
 - (b) By pressure and mineral cements (carbonate of lime, oxide of iron, silica).
 4. Fossils and their significance.
 5. Test for limestone with hydrochloric acid.
- b. Igneous rocks.
 1. Origin—formed by the cooling of molten rock, (a) on the surface near volcanoes as lava flow or volcanic ash; (b) as intruded masses in the crust.
 2. Examples—granite, basalt.
 3. Use. Minerals of lava are rich in plant food.

c. Metamorphic rocks.

1. Origin. When subjected to great pressure, or heat, or both, rocks are changed or metamorphosed.
 - (a) Limestone is changed to marble.
 - (b) Shale is changed to slate.
 - (c) Sandstone is changed to quartzite.
2. Especially common among mountains where, during the mountain formation, the strata have been subjected to great pressure and heat.
3. Examples—marble, slate, quartzite, anthracite coal, gneiss.
4. Test for marble with hydrochloric acid.

NOTE.—1. Discuss rocks within the student's environment only.

2. Do not stress chemical composition.

3. Make a collection of the rocks of the neighbourhood.

4. Observe types of rocks commonly used for different kinds of buildings. Give reasons for the selection of each type.

C.—Formation of Soil.

Weathering and erosion.

- a. Rain—(i) impact; (ii) solution.
- b. Freezing water.
- c. Rapid changes of temperature.
- d. Plants.
- e. Animals.
- f. Running water—observation of water-worn rocks.
- g. Snow and ice; glaciers.
- h. Wind erosion—wind dunes, waves, sand blast.
- i. Underground water—caves, stalactites, and stalagmites.

NOTE.—1. Distinguish soil from subsoil.

2. Distinguish sedimentary soils from transported soils.

3. Discuss such topics as pot holes, glacial scratches, formation of peat soils.

4. Make diagrams to show young, middle-aged, and old valleys.

5. Observe evidences in your locality of the various factors of erosion.

D.—Kinds of Soil.

Observational studies of sand, clay and loam.

- a. Classification according to derivation: sand, clay, humus, loam.
- b. Properties of each.
 1. Texture and structure. Cultivation can improve the structure of a soil but not the texture.
 2. Moisture-holding capacity; relation of texture to moisture-holding capacity.
 3. Adhesiveness. Effect of working clay when wet.
 4. Tenacity with which moisture clings to the fine particles of a clay soil. A plant will wilt more quickly in a clay soil than in a sandy soil containing an equal amount of water.

5. Presence of moisture, air, lime, iron, alkali, and acid.
 - (a) Kinds and function of water in the soil; free, capillary, and hygroscopic.
 - (b) Function of air in the soil.
 - (c) Test for iron with a magnet.
 - (d) Test for lime with hydrochloric acid.
 - (e) Test for alkali and acid by use of red and blue litmus paper.
- c. Special importance of each kind of plant growth.
 1. Sand by itself—a barren soil; subject to leaching of plant food. Because it holds little water, it warms up quickly in the spring and is good for early vegetables.
 2. Clay by itself cannot be used for farming. Because of its tendency to hold water, it warms slowly in the spring and is most suitable for crops which grow slowly and ripen late in the season—corn, wheat, oats, barley, rye. It is rich in minerals such as potassium, sodium, calcium, magnesium, and iron.
 3. Loam soil—like clay soil, it will hold water well, and like sandy soil, it will not cake when dried. It is open enough to admit a circulation of air. Being dark in colour, humus adds warmth to soil. Humus adds fibre and so prevents drifting. Humus provides food for the germ life of the soil. An excellent soil for garden and field crops.
- d. Importance of conservation and improvement of soils by addition of organic substances and by tillage.
 1. Addition of organic substances—barnyard manure, green manure, moss; (crop rotation).
 2. Tillage.
 - (a) Fall plowing.—(1) Deep plowing brings up fresh soil. (2) Loosens soil to store moisture to a greater depth. (3) Danger of soil drifting (clod mulch).
 - (b) Spring plowing.—(1) Shallow plowing and surface cultivation conserve moisture. (2) The soil mulch.
 - (c) Summer fallow: benefits—keeping down weeds; harm—soil drifting, loss in money through disuse of land.
- e. Demonstrations.
 1. Fill a test tube with water, cork tightly and freeze.
 2. Show how water rises in capillary tubes. Explain the phenomon. Discuss the need for a supply of free water at a proper level in the soil.
 3. By an experiment, show the action of a soil mulch.
 4. Water or physical analysis of a sample of mixed soil.

E.—The Uses of Soils to Man (Simple Survey).

- a. Supply plants with necessary mineral foods.
- b. A reservoir from which plants take both water and air.
- c. Certain kinds of clay are used for making pottery and china.
- d. Bricks, artificial stones, and tiles are soil products.
- e. Some of our cleaning preparations are products of alkali soils.

- f. Glass is made from sand.
- g. Sand in the sand blast for cleaning spark plugs and for etching glass.

***F.—Other Products of the Earth's Crust.**

- a. From slate—roofing slates, blackboards.
- b. From shale and limestone—cement; from limestone—quicklime, plaster, mortar and stucco, agricultural lime.
- c. From metal ores—iron, copper, lead, zinc, and aluminum.
- d. Coal, oil, and gas—a discussion on these substances as found in Alberta.

****G.—The History of the Earth Reconstructed (Story of the Rock Strata).**

- a. Parts have been covered with seas and lakes.
- b. Thickness shows that the earth must be old.
- c. Rock-soil cycle.
- d. Fossils.
 - 1. Preservation of actual plants or animals.
 - 2. Moulds and casts.
 - 3. Petrification.
- e. Where fossils are found (formed).
- f. Study of fossils reveals—
 - 1. Order of strata being laid down.
 - 2. Length of time gaps.
 - 3. Identity of strata of the same age.
 - 4. Development of plants and animals to present forms.
 - 5. Causes of the extinction of early forms.

THEME II: PLANT LIFE—THE LIVING COVER OF THE EARTH.

Preamble:

From a study of the earth's crust, we pass to the living cover of the earth. The part of the living cover of the earth most often seen is the grasses. The cereals, or grains, which furnish the largest part of human food belong to the grass family. Large regions covered with trees are forests or forest areas. The common fruits of the world grow on trees. There are many other flowering plants such as most of our wayside flowers; most of our common weeds; our garden vegetables; and the plants of our flower garden. Such plants as ferns do not have flowers. There is the great flora of the sea; the humble growths upon walls and gutters, and in ponds.

NOTE.—Before beginning this theme, turn to Theme III, Animal Life, of Section A, and study or review Unit A, part a, b and c.

A.—The Natural Environment of Plants (Simple Survey).

The natural environment of plants consists of climatic conditions, soil, other plants, and animals.

- a. Climatic conditions.
 - 1. Water—the one basic need.
 - (a) Water combined with other substances fills the cells and circulates through the organism as cell sap.

- (b) In a dormant condition, plants may survive a long period during which water is not available; e.g., lichens.

2. Temperature.

- (a) When temperature is low, sap freezes.
 (b) When temperature is high (or the air is dry) water evaporates. (See D, 6.)

- *(c) There is a particular temperature at which a certain seed germinates best and a temperature below which it will not germinate at all, and another temperature above which the embryo will not grow.

	Lowest.	Most Suitable.	Maximum.
Wheat	41°F.	84°F.	108°F.
Barley	41°F.	84°F.	100°F.
Corn	49°F.	91°F.	115°F.

3. Influence of climate on distribution of plants: zones of plant life.

(a) Arctic flora.

- (1) Only surface soil is ever free from ice (frost).
- (2) Season is short. Plants quickly flower and bear fruit.
- (3) None grows tall. Important that first snows shall cover and protect them.
- (4) Examples—lichens, mosses, grasses, dwarf willows and birches.

(b) Temperate flora.

- (1) Near polar zones, tree growth ceases; timber line marked by scraggy trees.
- (2) Deciduous trees increase in number and variety in warmer parts.
- (3) Plants are adapted to the winter in several ways:
 - (i) By suspension of activity.
 - (ii) By dying down to the ground.
 - (iii) By dying completely, leaving seeds to continue the species.
 - (iv) Many differences in flora according to temperature, exposure, humidity, and soil.

(c) Tropical flora.

Numerous varieties of plants within narrow areas.

- (1) The rain-forest, which grows where moisture and heat are continuous the year round.
 - (i) Tall trees, entangled by great vines.
 - (ii) Interior dark, still, hot, and steamy.
- (2) The jungle, a region having a dry season. Forest growth less luxuriant and less continuous.

(d) Desert flora.

- (1) Flora is scattered.
- (2) Plants show many devices for storing water. Surface for evaporation reduced to a minimum. Examples.
- (3) Devices for repelling plant-eating animals: sharp, irritating spines; tough, pale green leaves with a disagreeable odor and taste; e.g., common sage brush.

(e) Mountain flora.

- (1) Because of changes in temperature, the flora varies with the altitude.
- (2) On high mountain slopes, forests disappear.
- (3) Upper portion—alpine flora.

(f) Water plants—of both salt and fresh water.

- (1) Varied forms—floating, anchored, some with true roots.
- (2) Rushes, reeds, mosses, and lilies; common fresh-water and swamp plants.
- (3) Trees—cypress, black gum, willow, and mangrove.
- (4) Provisions for securing air.
 - (i) Internal air-spaces.
 - (ii) Mangrove roots start from above water surface (even from lower limbs).
 - (iii) Knobs, or knees, grow upward from cypress roots and project above the water surface.

b. The soil.

1. Part of the chemical elements which supply plant food come from the soil.
2. Soil must be such that roots can penetrate,
3. It must be able to hold some water.
4. Plant food must be readily soluble in water.
5. It must be free from any large amounts of chemicals that poison plant tissues.

c. Other plants. (Simple Survey.)

No square inch of soil remains for which plants do not compete.

1. Roots compete with roots for water and the dissolved nutrient salts.
2. Leaves compete with leaves for the sunlight necessary in the manufacture of food.
3. Overcrowding. Sow lettuce too thickly, and few perfect plants will be produced.
4. Plants may be overshadowed and stunted by growth all about them.
5. Parasitic plants—dodder, mistletoe, blights, mildews. These prey during their entire lives upon other plants.
- *6. Lichens (on bare rocks); mangroves (in salt water); fresh-water plants less subjected to competition.
- *7. Some plants are of mutual assistance to one another.
- *8. Plant societies.

d. Animals. (Simple Survey.)

1. Animals that eat plants.
2. Earthworms and other tiny animals in the soil admit air and warmth.
3. Bees and other pollen-carrying insects.
4. Harmful insects—cutworms, wireworms, saw-flies, caterpillars (cabbage white, forest-tent), grasshopper, plant lice.
5. Beneficial insects—ladybird beetle, etc.
6. Beneficial and harmful birds.
7. Animals to whose fur burry seeds cling.

B.—Study of a Green Plant (Bean or Corn).

- a. A study of its parts.
 1. Root—classification; root hairs.
 2. Stem—division into nodes and internodes.
 3. Leaves—a complete leaf; arrangement on stem; types and veining.
 4. Flower—parts and their uses.
- b. Special problems to study.
 1. How plant food enters the roots—osmosis.
 2. How plants get rid of excess moisture—transpiration.
 3. How food is manufactured in the leaf—photosynthesis.
 4. How seed is produced in the flower—pollination and fertilization.
 5. The meaning of germination of seed—the embryo.
 6. How the seedling “comes up” above the ground—bean and corn.

NOTE.—*Wherever possible, experimental work should be done.*

C.—How Plants are Propagated and Distributed.

- a. Nature's methods.
 1. By seeds—how distributed.
 - (a) Explosive fruits.
 - (1) Ripe fruits of touch-me-not, wild geranium, and violet, throw their seeds when disturbed.
 - (2) Caragana, peas, beans when dry snap open, and by twisting the pod, throw the seeds several feet.
 - (3) The squirting cucumber and witch hazel have an elastic tissue which suddenly contracts, discharging seeds with great force.
 - (b) Transportation by winds.
 - (1) Dandelion and thistle—calyx serves as a parachute.
 - (2) Winged fruits—maple, elm, ash, birch.
 - (3) Silk of milkweed; hairs on cotton seed; wool of the cat-tail; cottony seeds of willow and poplar.
 - (4) Globular shape of Russian thistle, tumble weed, pepper grass.
 - (5) Censer action—poppy.
 - (c) Transportation by water.
 - (1) Coconut has an outer fibrous husk which serves as a life-preserver.
 - (2) Air chamber in the cranberry.
 - (3) Corky-margin on seeds of milkweed; corky adhesion on narrow-leaved dock.
 - (d) Transportation by birds.
 - (1) Seeds of berries and other fleshy fruits pass through digestive tracts of birds uninjured.
 - (2) Small seeds carried in mud that clings to the feet of birds.
 - (e) Transportation by other animals.
 - (1) Many seeds and fruits bear spines, hooks, and hairs which adhere to the coats of animals, and to clothing—burdock, cockleburs, beggars ticks, sticktights.
 - (2) Nuts carried by squirrels.

- *2. By runners—strawberry.
- *3. By suckers—red raspberries, blackberries, roses, lilacs.
- *4. By underground stems or rootstocks—couch grass, thistle, potatoes.
- *5. By bulbs—onions, tulips, hyacinths, daffodils.
- *6. By corms—gladioli.
- *7. By spores—mushrooms, molds, ferns.

****b. Artificial propagation—**

- 1. By cuttings or slips.
 - (a) Root-cuttings—rhubarb.
 - (b) Stem-cuttings—poplars, willows, caraganas, geraniums, fuchsias.
- 2. By layering—black raspberry.
- 3. By grafting—purpose:
 - (a) To hasten the production of fruit on young fruit trees.
 - (b) To improve the quality of the fruit.
- 4. By budding—practised for the same purposes as grafting.

***D.—Barriers to the Spread of Plants (Simple Survey).**

- 1. Oceans (water in general)—to land plants. Island floras are less varied than those of the mainland. Water barrier sometimes overcome by winds, birds, and ocean currents.
- 2. Deserts—except to those adapted to desert conditions.
- 3. Tropical forests—to plants adapted to desert life.
- 4. Mountain chains. Plants will not spread into cold climates above.
- 5. Winds. Prevailing winds prevent a spread of plants in the opposite direction.

****6. High summer temperatures, frequent high winds, and low humidity of the air in southeastern Alberta, result in a high rate of evaporation:**

	Manyberries.	Lethbridge.	Swift Current.
Average annual precipitation.....	11.31"	15.96"	15.31"
Evaporation	32.00"	24.09"	27.07"
Ratio of evaporation to precipitation	2.8:1	1.6:1	1.8:1

- (a) At Lacombe, Alberta, the ratio is 0.9:1. These ratios give a fair indication of conditions for plant growth, the lower ratio being the more favourable.
- (b) While 12 inches of precipitation alone is sufficient to grow a crop, the rate of evaporation is one of the determining factors; the soil type is an important factor also.
- (c) Crop production is the most difficult at about the 4th Meridian (excluding the Cypress Hills area) and becomes more favourable towards both east and west, until approximately the same conditions are found at Lethbridge and Swift Current, Saskatchewan.

E.—Gardening—Intensive Agriculture.

- 1. Constituents of soil and their uses to plants. (See Unit on Soil.)
- 2. Values of different methods of preparation of soil for plant growth.

3. Planning.
 - (a) Selection of seed—vitality and purity.
 - (b) Preparation and use of hotbed and cold frame.
 - (c) Size, location, and surroundings—variety of crops.
4. Planting and cultivating.
 - (a) Methods of planting and transplanting.
 - (1) Starting seeds in flats.
 - (2) Outdoor seed planting.
 - (b) Thinning and cultivating—use of hoe, cultivators, plow; relation of cultivation to aeration and capillarity.
 - (c) Weeds of the garden—nature, origin, harmfulness.
5. Harvesting and storing garden crops.
 - (a) Nothing should be allowed to go to waste.
 - (b) Harvesting—how accomplished.
 - (c) Storage—pit, root-house, and cellar storage. Chief requirements—a dark, cool place; not too dry.
 - (d) Crops with two harvests—radish, lettuce, rhubarb.
 - (e) Canning, preserving, dehydrating, pickling.
 - (f) Refrigeration—ice box (wet or dry ice); electric refrigeration.

F.—Trees (Simple Survey).

1. Their value in (a) soil enrichment; (b) shade; (c) cooling the atmosphere; (d) beautifying streets and homes thereby increasing property values; (e) homes for birds.
2. Parts of a typical tree and their functions. (See Structure of a Plant.)
3. Planting of trees.
 - (a) Desirable kinds of trees to plant.
 - (b) Methods of planting and transplanting.
4. Protection of trees.
 - (a) Enemies of trees and how controlled.
 - (b) Friends of trees and how protected.
 - * (c) Community and provincial regulations for care and protection of trees under their control.
5. Economic value of wooded areas.
 - (a) In regulating stream flow (watershed).
 - (b) In producing food, lumber, fuel, rubber, pulp, resin, turpentine, wood alcohol, rayon.
 - (c) Windbreaks.
6. Conservation of trees and wooded areas.
 - (a) Meaning, importance, and methods of conservation.
 - (b) Reforestation.

***G.—Test Seeds for Stored Food.**

1. Starch.
 - (a) Crush 5 or 6 peas; boil in water for 5 minutes; pour a few drops of the solution into a test tube; add water up to 10 c.c.; add a few drops of tincture of iodine and boil.
 - (b) Reaction.—Starch turns blue in colour.

2. Protein.

- (a) Crush 5 or 6 peas; boil with 10 c.c. of water; cool by holding the test tube in cold water; after you are sure it is cold, add a few drops of nitric acid; boil again and cool.
- (b) Reaction.—If a yellow colour develops, protein is indicated. Add a few drops of ammonia water. If the yellow colour deepens to orange, you have a further indication of protein.
- (c) Millon's reagent or the Biuret reaction may be substituted.

3. Grape sugar.

Fehling's solution—

- (i) Copper sulphate, 35 grams in 500 c.c. of water.
- (ii) Rochelle salts, 173 grams and 50 grams of sodium hydroxide, in 500 c.c. of water.

NOTE.—Keep separate and mix in equal quantities when required.

- (a) Crush 5 or 6 peas (use late varieties; more sugar); boil in water for 5 minutes.
- (b) Heat about 10 c.c. of Fehling's solution in another test tube. No yellow colour indicates that the solution is in good condition.
- (c) Add contents of test tube containing boiled peas to test tube of Fehling's solution. (Keep flame near upper surface of boiling mixture.)
- (d) Reaction.—If grape sugar is present in sufficient amount, a yellow to brick-red colour will develop in the mixture.

4. Oil.

- (a) Crush walnut kernels on writing paper and note the translucent grease spots.
- (b) Heat linseed in a test tube held horizontally. Drops of oil appear on the upper surface.
- (c) Ether extraction.
 - (1) Crush sunflower seeds and put in a small test tube.
 - (2) Add ether or benzine until the test tube is two-thirds full. Shake well; let stand and shake again.
 - (3) Filter and evaporate the filtrate.
 - (4) Reaction.—Rub substance that does not evaporate on writing paper and see if you get a translucent spot.

5. Value of stored food.

- (a) Take forty bean seeds; from ten remove about three-quarters of the cotyledons; from ten remove one-half the cotyledons; from ten remove one-quarter of the cotyledons; leave ten as they are.

NOTE.—Be careful not to injure the growing axis. Cover cut portions with vaseline.
- (b) Plant the forty seeds in blotting paper over sawdust. Give them the correct conditions necessary for germination. Compare the results at the end of 5 days; 10 days; 14 days.
- (c) An alternative method is to use the whole seeds; weigh the seeds only, before and after germination. Compare these weights.

***H.—Some Interesting Things to Do.**

1. Discuss the conditions necessary for germination of seeds. Seeds require air, moisture, and heat.
2. Discover the effect of slow and rapid freezing of cell contents of a root of the beet plant.
3. Discover the effect of (i) water on the root; (ii) gravity on the root and stem, of a growing plant.
4. Discover the nature of respiration in plants.
5. Observe how a deciduous tree prepares for winter. Compare this tree with a pine or spruce tree in late autumn.

****I.—How Plants Came to be Studied and Classified (Simple Survey).**

1. Man's first interest in plants was for their use as food.
2. Certain plants were cultivated and improved for food.
3. Medicinal values were discovered. This interest led to first attempts to describe plants accurately. A physician invented a system of naming plants.
4. Collecting, pressing, naming and describing plants became a fascinating study. The more they were studied, the more similarities were found between them and animals.
 - (a) They need same conditions to live.
 - (b) They perform the same vital processes.
 - (c) They have organs for these processes.
5. The discovery that green plants give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide was an important one. (Plants help animals by keeping air pure.)
6. The latest great discovery is that plants are the only food-makers in the world; the only means known whereby energy from the sun can be gathered, and stored.
 - (a) They feed themselves and offspring; also animals.
 - (b) This food supplies energy.
 - (c) They need energy for movements, such as climbing; to overcome obstacles; to make and transport food; to divide cells.
7. There are too many species to be considered separately, so they are classified in large groups or families (closely related species or kinds); e.g., Rose Family—rose, cherry, apple, plum, etc.
8. The names accepted as valid by the Dominion Government at Ottawa and by British authorities are listed in a great book called the "Index Kewensis" (index of Kew Botanical Gardens, London, Eng.).

NOTE.—To secure the correct name of a plant, send the following to Dominion Botanist, Division of Botany, Ottawa:—

1. A sample in the best possible condition, including root.
2. Information: (a) place of collection; (b) date of same; (c) collector's name and address; (d) description of soil, amount of moisture, neighbouring plants, etc.

THEME III: THE UNIVERSE.

Preamble:

For centuries men thought that our solar system made up the whole of the universe; that the sun and our earth, with the other planets and their moons, were the only bodies existing in space. Progress in understanding the vast space of the universe was made when men learned to measure the speed of light; and to discover how far away the stars are from us. Heavenly movements were studied. The spectroscope led to an understanding of the composition of heavenly bodies.

The sun is the center of our solar system. It is of vital importance, for its heat and light make life on the globe possible. The heat sets the air in motion, forming winds which bring rain, modifies climate, and starts waves and currents in the ocean.

The movements of the earth—rotation and revolution—are also important. Rotation brings day and night, which influences the habits of men, animals, and plants. Revolution causes seasons, which have a still greater effect on life.

The stars are part of man's environment, distant but valuable. The scientist studies those distant parts of the universe. We have seen man battling, studying, then controlling the forces of nature. While it may not be possible to control the stars, yet as we can measure in part their influence upon us, we can make use of them.

A.—The Earth and its Neighbours.

a. Our nearest neighbour, the moon.

1. Limits of man's penetration into the atmosphere. Mount Everest, aeroplane and gondola ascensions.
2. Moon—size, distance away, physical condition; the most conspicuous object in the night sky.

(a) Heat and cold on the moon.

- (1) A complete day, about twenty-nine of our days in length; daylight and night more than fourteen of our days each in length.

(i) Day—temperature as high as 244°F .

(ii) Night—temperature as low as -243°F . (perhaps much lower).

- (2) No atmosphere (air and clouds) to act as a blanket to prevent rapid heating by day and rapid loss of heat by night.

(b) Light and darkness on the moon.

- (1) Diffusion of light on the earth by moisture and dust in the atmosphere.

- (2) No such atmosphere on the moon.

- (3) Where light does not strike, there is darkness.

(i) Allow a beam of sunlight to enter a darkened room through a slit in the blind; place a piece of rough, white paper in the beam and note the difference in the lighting of the room.

(ii) Shadows on the moon are very sharp.

- (4) No twilight in the moon's long day.

- (c) No odours on the moon. These depend upon air.
- (d) No vegetation. This depends on air, water and temperature.
- (e) No sound on the moon; no medium (air) to carry sound.
- (f) The moon under a telescope.
 - (1) Surface covered with many large craters; no evidence of erosion.
 - (2) There is no water on the moon.
 - (3) "Man in the moon" simply areas of land of different appearance from the rest; plateaus.
 - (4) Because the moon's time of rotation is nearly equal to its time of revolution around the earth, we see only one side of the moon (always the same side). 59% of moon's surface has been seen, 41% will never be seen.
- (g) Weight on the moon.
 - (1) Weight is really gravity pull.
 - (2) Gravity pull on the moon about one-sixth of that on the earth.
 - (i) A 150-pound man weighs only 25 pounds on the moon.
 - (ii) One could jump six times as high as on the earth.
 - (iii) Gravity force not great enough to hold water vapour or other gases on its surface. This is the reason for its being airless, waterless and soundless.

3. The earth-moon relationships.

- (a) The moon gives us light by night. It shines by reflected sunlight.
 - (1) Moon's surface, as a reflector of light, equal to that of ordinary sandstone.
 - (2) Phases (shapes) of the moon—new moon, first quarter, full moon, third quarter.

* (b) Tides.

- (1) Ebb and flow; neap and spring.
 - (i) The earth turns on its axis once every 24 hours.
 - (ii) A high tide occurs every twelve hours, followed by a low tide six hours later.
- (2) Effect on shipping; establishing a port (tide-tables showing daily changes for a month).

(c) Eclipses (1) of the sun; (2) of the moon.

Make diagrams for conditions controlling the eclipse of the moon and of the sun.

** (d) Some false beliefs about the moon's influence.

- (1) By observing the moon, one can foretell weather.
- (2) Weather is influenced by the changes of the moon's phases.
- (3) Weather depends on the direction in which the horns of the new moon point.
- (4) If there is a bright star near the moon, stormy weather will follow.
- (5) Seeds will grow better if planted during certain phases of the moon.
- (6) Bacon will shrivel in the pan if the hog was killed at the full of the moon.

b. The Sun.

1. The center of the solar system.

- (a) Our sun is a star.
- (b) Around it are nine great planets, whirling along their orbits at tremendous speed: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto.
- (c) Attractive force, called gravitation, keeps the planets in their orbits around the sun.
- * (d) It was once thought that the earth was the center of the solar system. (Read about Ptolemy.)
 - (1) Men observed the sun rise and set.
 - (2) They noticed that the moon and stars rise in the east and set in the west.
 - (3) They concluded that the earth was standing still and all heavenly bodies moved in great circles around the earth each day.

* (e) Copernicus and the Copernican theory.

- (1) Rising and setting of sun, moon, and stars is due to the turning of the earth on its axis.
- (2) Galileo, a century later, with his telescope viewed the turning movement of other bodies similar to the earth.
- (3) Foucault, 1851, and his great pendulum. Start the pendulum swinging in the direction of the floor boards; in a little while it will change the plane of its swing. (Room has actually turned with the earth.)
- (4) Experiment.

Take a circular dish or bowl filled with water. Dust the surface with chalk. Place a line (diameter) of charcoal dust upon the chalk. Mark this line on the dish. The water will appear to turn, as indicated by the movement of the black line. Conclusion.—The water has the tendency to lag behind the rotation of the earth.

2. The sun—its size, composition, distance from the earth, temperature.

- (a) Size.—100 times the diameter of the earth; its bulk more than a million times as great.
- (b) Composition.
 - (1) No elements are known to exist on the sun, that do not exist on the earth; discovery of helium.
 - (2) At the temperature of the sun, all the chemical elements are in form of gases.
 - ** (3) The spectroscope; Fraunhofer's lines.
 - (4) Pictures taken at the time of an eclipse, indicate an atmosphere on the sun, and show evidence of terrific forces that keep it continuously moving.
- (c) Distance from the earth—93,000,000 miles.
- (d) Temperature—at the surface about $11,000^{\circ}\text{F.}$; very much hotter in the interior, possibly as high as $180,000,000^{\circ}\text{F.}$

3. The sun as a source of energy. (Simple Survey.)
 - (a) Whole earth receives less than one billionth part of the energy given out by the sun.
 - (b) Every square yard of the earth's surface receives energy at the rate of $1\frac{1}{2}$ horse-power; definition of horse-power.
 - (c) Energy of sun stored up in fuel; as coal, wood, peat.
 - (d) Energy of sun's rays is stored in food; meaning of "canned sunshine."
 - (e) Energy of sun's rays changed into heat; burning glass.
 - (f) Relation of water power to the sun.
 - (g) Certain rays of the sun's energy strike the eyes, are changed to light and enable us to see.
 - (h) Causes wind to blow.
4. Other ways in which the sun influences us.
 - (a) Colour is reflected sunlight. Pass a beam of sunlight through a glass prism.
 - * (b) Sun-burn; ultra-violet rays.
 - (1) Treatment of rickets, tuberculosis, some skin diseases.
 - (2) Use of quartz glass in hospitals.
 - (3) Fog, soot, clouds, dust, and wool clothing, filter out the ultra-violet rays.
 - (4) Ultra-violet rays affect paint; weaken oxidized oil; reduce hardened paint to a brittle powder which "chalks" and wears off easily.
 - ** (c) Sunspots—relation to Aurora Borealis; also to radio reception. (Height of the layer of ionized air, called the Kennelly-Heaviside layer.)
5. The sun through telescope and camera.
 - * (a) Corona, photosphere, and chromosphere.
 - * (b) Sunspots—nature; period of maximum and minimum sunspots.
 - (c) An eclipse of the sun.
 - (1) Diagram to show the cause.
 - (2) Primitive people were terrified during an eclipse.
 - (3) Scientific knowledge removes fear.
 - (4) Movement of moon and sun so well known that the time of future eclipses may be told with great accuracy.
 - (5) The path of the shadow.
- c. How the Earth's Motions Affect Conditions upon the Earth.
 1. Changes occur in the length of day and night.
 - (a) Days in summer are much longer in Alberta than days in winter.
 - (b) Axis of the earth inclined at an angle of $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees from a line perpendicular to the plane of the earth's orbit.
 - (c) Earth travels its orbit in $365\frac{1}{4}$ days.
 - (d) Earth turns on its axis once each 24 hours.

- (e) Significance of dates, March 21, June 21, September 21, December 21.
2. Summer is hotter than winter in Alberta.
 - (a) Slope of the sun's rays. Use diagrams to illustrate.
 - (b) The heat equator. Vertical rays of sun shift back and forth between $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees north and south of the geographical equator.
 - (c) The seasons.
 - (1) Temperature, rainfall and hours of daylight affected by seasonal changes.
 - (2) Some examples of how plant and animal life are influenced by these changes in their environment.
 3. How time is measured.
 - * (a) An apparent solar day; a mean solar day; local noon. Telling time by longitude.
 - (b) Standard time; five zones in America.
 - (c) Daylight saving.
 - (d) A calendar year.
 - (1) The mean solar year is 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, and 46 seconds.
 - (2) Establishment of leap year.
- *d. Comets and Meteors.
1. Have always excited wonder and fear and have led to many superstitions.
 2. Nucleus, coma, and long tail; composition of each part.
 3. Orbits of comets; tail always away from the sun. Halley's comet—period of 75 years (1910-1985).
 4. "Shooting stars"—their cause.
 - (a) When a "shooting star" enters our atmosphere it glows because of friction.
 - (b) Those that reach the ground are called meteorites.
- *e. Other Planets of the Solar System.
1. Names, sizes, composition, and distances from the sun.
- NOTE.—A brief discussion about anything of interest relating to these planets, as:—
- (a) Possibility of life on Mars.
 - (b) Rings of Saturn.
 - (c) Discovery of Pluto.
 - (d) Venus, the morning "star"; the evening "star".
 - (e) How the planets shine.
 - (f) The year, also the day, on each of the planets.
- *f. Balance of Forces.
1. Story of Galileo.
 - (a) The sun as the center of the universe.
 - (b) Planets are not stars.
 - (c) Law of falling bodies.
 2. Story of Newton's work; the universal law of gravitation.

*g. A Few of the Best-Known Stars and Constellations.

1. The north star—a guiding beacon.
 - (a) Latitude.
 - (1) Angle of the north star above the horizon.
 - (2) Angle of the sun above the horizon at exact noon.
 - (b) Longitude. Use of a ship's clock or chronometer; use of radio; use of the nautical almanac and the time of passage of a certain star through the prime meridian.
2. Capella, Sirius, Regulus in the Sickle, Big Dipper, Little Dipper, Pegasus, Orion, Cassiopeia, Heavenly Twins, etc.
3. Distances from the earth in light-years; nature of a light-year.
4. Size, brightness, and colour (a general statement).
5. Movement.
 - (a) Show that apparent movement is due to rotation of earth.
 - (b) Show that there is real movement. The Big Dipper and the value of the north star as a permanent mark.
6. Each star a sun, the center of a solar system.
7. One myth associated with one of the constellations.
8. The Milky Way.
9. Galaxies and nebulae.

**h. Ancient Beliefs Concerning Heavenly Bodies.

1. Sun worship.
 - (a) Stone columns at Carnac, France, where a priest of the New Stone Age greeted the rising sun.
 - (b) Ancient druid priests greeted the first day of spring. Temples were built to mark that one day; the return of the sun.
2. The early magician was the "scientist" of the tribe.
 - (a) Relation of storms, lightning, thunder, etc., to proper offering to gods.
 - (b) Names given to him: medicine man, soothsayer, astrologer, or witch doctor.
 - (c) As his power increased, the wise man was asked more and more difficult questions:
 - (1) What is the sun?
 - (2) Why do we have day and night?
 - (3) Where does the rain come from?
 - (4) What causes heat and cold?
 - (d) Not knowing the answers, he invented explanations. Read about some of these explanations.
3. Greek gods.—Apollo, the god of the sun; Poseidon, the god of the sea; Zeus, the all-powerful father of gods and men, and many others.
4. The Greek world—a great plain, bounded on west by the Atlantic, and on the east by a sea which lay somewhere beyond India.
5. Roman gods.
 - (a) Deification of the powers of nature.

- (b) Greek influence—Jupiter, ruler of gods and men; Mars; Vesta; Minerva; Venus.
- 6. The Roman world.
 - (a) The geographer Strabo.
 - (1) The earth a sphere composed of a great land mass, and a great ocean.
 - (2) The earth stretched from the Atlantic to a sea beyond India.
 - (b) The geographer Ptolemy.
 - (1) The earth the center of the solar system.
 - (2) Information given in his books was taken in preference to actual observations.
- 7. Astrology. Belief that—
 - (a) The fate and fortune of people depends upon the arrangement of the stars upon the day of birth.
 - (b) There are other important days in their lives.
 - (c) The future can be foretold by "reading" the stars.
- 8. The use of scientific methods has changed beliefs of long standing.
 - (a) Man has gained increasing knowledge of the forces in his environment.
 - (b) Through this knowledge he has invented means by which he either uses these forces, or adjusts himself to them.
 - (c) This knowledge has caused new thinking on the part of other men (not inventors).
- **9. Origin of our solar system.
 - (a) The nebular hypothesis.
 - (b) The planetesimal hypothesis.

OBSERVATIONAL WORK

A.—Fall.

1. Familiar trees; how they prepare for winter.
2. Seeds and seed dispersal.
3. Root propagation: bulb potting.
4. Stem cuttings; geraniums and snap dragons.
5. Greenwood cuttings: roses, forsythia, hydrangia.
6. Weathering of rocks; agents of weathering.
7. Planets and constellations.
8. The equinox.
9. Sky colours; sunsets, rainbows, dusty skies, blue sky.
10. Conservation as applied to soil fertility, forests, seeds, crops.

B.—Winter.

1. Temperature records; the thermometer.
2. Phases of the moon.
3. Constellations of the winter sky.
4. Frost bites; freezing ears, noses, cheeks, fingers; an explanation.
5. Rapid and slow freezing of vegetables; effect of thawing.
6. Freezing mixtures; effect of salt in solution on the freezing point of water; applications: radiators in automobiles.

7. Winter clothing; principles followed.
8. How schools and houses are heated; insulation.
9. Destructiveness of rabbits, deer, elk, etc., with respect to shrubs and trees.
10. Winter transportation.

C.—Spring.

1. Arbor Day; tree planting.
2. Tree study; branching, budding, leaves, flowers.
3. Seed planting.
4. Care of potted bulbs.
5. The hot bed and the cold frame.
6. Erosion of soil by spring floods: soil drifting.
7. Winter-killing of plant life.
8. Trip to a commercial greenhouse.
9. Methods of tilling the soil; gardens, field-crops, root-crops.
10. Ways in which plants are adapted to meet (a) competition; (b) unfavourable climatic conditions; (c) animal enemies.

GRADE IX

I.—ENVIRONMENT

A.—Chief Factors or Conditions of the Environment (Simple Survey).

1. Nature of environment.
2. Relation of air, water, heat, light, and soil to living.
3. Some ways in which environment affects living things.
4. Man's natural and artificial environment.

B.—Environment as a Source of Knowledge (Simple Survey).

1. Use of senses in obtaining knowledge.
2. Relation between—
 - (a) Knowledge and superstition.
 - (b) Knowledge and experiment.
 - (c) Experiment and science.

C.—Meaning and Importance of an Experiment (Simple Survey).

1. Factors involved, illustrated by a simple demonstration:
 - (a) Stating problem.
 - (b) Securing material.
 - (c) Use of material to obtain information that will be of use in solving problem.
 - (d) Observation of results.
 - (e) Conclusions drawn.
 - (f) Practical application of conclusions to the solution of new problems.
2. Repeated reference to the value and use of an experiment in developing scientific method. Distinguish theories, principles, laws. "The pathway to science is paved with discarded theories."

3. Meaning and importance of science in this age.

(a) Read about the work of *three* scientists. Choose any three of the following: Galileo, Torricelli, Pasteur, Burbank, Saunders, Mendel, Darwin, Curie, Archimedes, Franklin, Maxwell.

(b) How one may become scientific in his attitude and work.

NOTE.—Sections A, B and C are included in the course for Grades VII and VIII, and will thus become review work in Grade IX.

D.—Nature of Environment.

1. Matter.

(a) Kinds: (1) inorganic (rock, soil—sand, clay, and silt only, water); (2) organic (humus, plants, animals).

(b) Properties of matter.

(c) Demonstrations to show (1) that organic matter will burn; (2) two general properties and two special properties of matter.

2. Energy.

(a) Kinds: kinetic and potential.

(b) Forms: heat, mechanical, light, electrical, chemical.

(c) Sources and general uses of energy to man in work of water, air, heat.

E.—Meaning and Importance of Work.

1. What work is.

2. Common resistance to work: friction, weight and inertia.

3. Aids to work.

(a) The lever and inclined plane.

(1) Demonstration—the principles and mechanical advantages of lever and inclined plane.

(2) Illustrations of lever and inclined planes in common utensils around home.

(b) Application of principle of lever and inclined plane to pulley, wheel and axle; wedge and screw as illustrated around home.

(c) Some common uses of simple and compound machines in home and neighbourhood.

(d) Lubrication.

II.—AIR AND ITS WORK

A.—Atmospheric Pressure.

1. Demonstration: air has weight and exerts pressure because of this weight.

2. Structure, principle and uses of barometer (aneroid and mercurial) and barograph.

B.—Some Common Uses of Air.

1. Use of atmospheric pressure in lift pump, siphon, medicine dropper, non-skid tire, vacuum cleaner, drain pipe, air pump, balloon, airplane and parachute, sealing fruit-jars, breathing.

2. Uses of compressed air.

(a) Physical properties of gases.

- (b) In air gun, sand blast, sprayer, door check, mail and cash tubes, air brakes, automobile tires, force pump, caisson (dangers), submarine, floating of sunken ships, air drills, invalid pillow and life belts.
- (c) Demonstration of force air-pump and discussion of application of its principle to any five uses of compressed air.

C.—Uses of Air to Carry Sound.

- 1. How sound is produced, how it travels and how it varies in intensity and rate of speed and pitch.
 - (a) Demonstration of production of sound by vibration.
 - (b) Demonstration that sound requires a material medium.

D.—Use of Oxygen in the Air in Oxidation.

- 1. Presence and proportion of oxygen.
- 2. Rapid oxidation.
- 3. Slow oxidation:
 - (a) Rusting of iron is oxidation (demonstration).
 - (b) Dangers of slow oxidation and their prevention.
- 4. Results of oxidation.
 - (a) Products.
 - (b) Indestructibility of matter.

E.—Use of Air to Living Things.

- 1. Oxidation in living things.
 - (a) Demonstration to show that plants and animals give off heat and oxides. (Emphasize the fact that oxidation goes on in every cell of the body.)
 - (b) Living things as engines.
 - (c) Natural respiration.
 - (1) Breathing mechanism in the human body. Demonstrate the action of the diaphragm.
 - (2) General adaptations for breathing (or using air) in insects, fish, frogs and plants.
 - (3) Air, oxidation, energy and work in their relation to the tissues of the human body.
 - (4) Methods of breathing (mechanical action involved).

III.—WATER AND ITS WORK

A.—Water Pressure.

- 1. How used and controlled.
- 2. Demonstration to show that water exerts a measurable pressure upon surfaces.

B.—How Water is Used in the Home.

- 1. Review Theme I (Water), Unit B, of the course for Grades VII and VIII, Section A.

2. Demonstration of circulation of water by convection due to unequal heating.
(Make a detailed study of a water heating-system.)
3. Hot-water heater and how it works.

C.—Cold Water and Ice.

1. Importance of both in modern home.
2. Storage of ice.
3. How the ice-box works.
4. Electric refrigeration—principles.
5. Dry ice (solid carbon-dioxide).

D.—Water Supply in Community.

1. Water sources. Review Theme I (Water), Unit C, of the course for Grades VII and VIII, Section A.
 - (a) Impurities and control.
 - (b) Types of water systems (gravity and force).
 - (c) Dams: construction and principles involved. (How a dam increases water pressure.)
2. Causal relations between energy of sun and evaporation, molecular explanation, rainfall, waterfall, and passage of water through mains to house faucet.

IV.—HEAT AND ITS WORK

A.—Sources of Heat.

1. The sun.—Concentration of heat dependent upon angle of sun's rays.
2. Chemical action—oxidation.
3. Friction.
4. Compression.
5. Percussion.
6. Electrical energy.

B.—Physical Effects of Heat upon Matter.

(Gases, liquids, solids, with demonstration of expansion of matter by heat, and examples of thermometers.)

C.—Use of Heat in Warming the Home.

1. Early methods: fireplace, common stove; relation to ventilation.
 - (a) Construction, principles, care and control of stove.
 - (b) Application of principle to one common type of heating apparatus in home. (Note the importance of humidification.)
 - (c) Demonstration of principle of electrical resistance.
 - (d) Uses of electric heat in home (heater, toaster, electric iron, range).
2. Three types of heat distribution.
 - (a) Conduction.
 - (b) Radiation.
 - (c) Convection.

Demonstration of each type.
3. Conservation of heat in home: in building a house—storm doors and windows; in fireless cooker; in thermos bottles.

V.—LIGHT, ITS WORK, USE AND CONTROL

A.—The Sun as the Source of Natural Light.

Transmission of sunlight (demonstration to show that light travels in straight lines).

B.—Artificial Light.

1. Sources (discussion of evolution of artificial lighting).
2. Production of light by a burning candle (showing parts of flame and products given off).
3. Construction and principle of oil lamp.
4. Types of artificial illumination.
 - (a) Early types (sperm-oil dip, lamp, fish-tail gas jet).
 - (b) Modern types (gas mantle, jet, incandescent lamp, carbon and tungsten filaments).
5. Relation to eyes (need for adequate light to prevent eye strain).
6. Methods of lighting, (direct, indirect or diffused).

VI.—STUDY OF INDUSTRY

A.—Sources of Energy in Industry.

1. Heat, water, electricity and direct use of sun's rays.
2. Electrical energy.
 - (a) Magnets and their uses.
 - (b) How generated,—elementary study of voltaic cell and principle of dynamo.
 - (1) Applications (with elementary explanations): (a) doorbell, (b) telegraph, (c) telephone, (d) radio, (e) electroplating.
 - (2) Control of electricity in home: (a) switches, (b) fuses,—importance.
 - (3) Measurement (reading meters only).
 - (4) Motor (changes of electrical energy into energy of mechanical motion).

B.—Relation of Heat to Power.

1. Materials needed: fuels, water, boiler, engine.
2. Devices used to change heat to a different form of energy.
3. Structure and principle of a simple steam engine.
4. Discussion of relations between coal and work.
5. Change of energy from one form to another without loss or gain in total store of energy.

C.—Gas Engine (gasoline).

1. Explosions and energy of expanding gases.
2. Use of energy in automobile and Diesel engines.
3. Relation of kinetic energy to the control and operation of an automobile.

D.—Relation of Water to Power.

1. Dams (construction and use; future).

2. Locations best suited for dams.
3. Devices for using water power.
 - (a) Water wheels.
 - (b) Turbines.
 - (c) Flumes.
 - (d) Dynamo and wires for generating and transmitting.
4. Conservation of energy applied.

E.—Special Investigation of Uses of Energy in Typical Industry.

VII.—WORK OF SOLAR ENERGY AND ITS RELATION TO LIVING THINGS

A.—The Sun as Source of all Energy.

1. Direct Source.
 - (a) Heat effects upon air, water and metals, and molecular explanation.
 - (b) Chemical action of sun's energy (photography and photosynthesis).
 - (c) Demonstration of chemical action of sunlight by means of blueprint paper.
 - (d) Bluing clothes.
2. Indirect Source.
 - (a) Storage of energy in falling water.
 - (b) Storage of energy in fuels and foods.

B.—The Living Plant in the Soil.

1. How soils differ.
2. Garden and farm soils.
 - (a) Composition.
 - (b) Relative fertility.
 - (c) Methods of improvement.
 - (d) Effects of three different types of soil on plant growth.
3. Starch made in green leaves in the presence of sunlight.

NOTE.—Review Theme II (Plant Life), Unit B, of the course for Grades VII and VIII, Section, B, with reference to parts and functions of the green plant; its essential structure; its special structures (root hairs, stem, leaves); osmosis, photosynthesis.

VIII.—SAFEGUARDING AND IMPROVING LIFE OF INDIVIDUAL AND COMMUNITY

A.—Micro-organisms; Bacteria; Yeasts; Molds.

1. Form: tiny living organisms so small that they can be detected only by microscopes; structure of bacteria, yeasts, and molds under microscope.
2. Size—various.
3. Shape—various (spherical, rod-like, spiral).
4. Structure—definite (cell wall, protoplasm, nuclear material).
5. Propagation by simple fission.
6. Where found (in air, water, food, ground, as parasites on plants).

7. Conditions favorable to their growth (food, moisture, warmth, absence of strong light).
8. Observation of the growth of yeast under very warm, moderate and cold temperatures.

B.—Micro-organisms in Relation to Man and his Environment.

As beneficial agents:

- (a) In manufacture (butter, cheese, linen, leather).
- (b) In making bread (through action of yeast).
Note.—Yeast causes fermentation, resulting in the production of alcohol and carbon-dioxide.
- (c) In increasing soil fertility (by production of nitrates).
- (d) In causing decomposition of dead organic matter. Study one cycle, such as the Nitrogen Cycle.

SOME SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A.—Fall Observational Work.

1. Birds, insects, toads.
2. Seeds and seed dispersal.
3. Seed planting.
4. Leaf cuttings.
5. Plant diseases.
6. Weeds.
7. Tree study.
8. Weather forecasting.
9. Conservation as applied to insects, animals, foods, and health.

B.—Spring Observational Work.

1. Conservation of natural resources.
2. Elimination of waste in home, school, city.
3. Bird life.
4. Wild flowers.
5. Preparation of soil.
6. Budding of plants.

C.—Environment.

1. A list of different kinds of work done in home, with kind of energy used in each case.
2. A list of different ways in which friction interferes with work and how it may be useful in doing work.
3. Examples of screw, pulley, wheel and axle, and wedge in everyday work of the community.
4. A study of a compound machine in the home (sewing machine, wringer, bicycle).

D.—Air and its Work.

1. Preparation of oxygen.
2. Preparation of carbon dioxide.

3. Why water rises in pump.
4. Construction of a lift pump.
5. Why milk can be "sucked" through a straw.
6. How an aquarium can be emptied with a siphon.
7. A list of ten physical and three chemical changes which take place about us.
8. A list of examples of slow oxidation.
9. Best methods of preventing slow oxidation.
10. How to increase one's lung capacity.
11. How insects, birds and frogs breathe.
12. A report upon various methods employed to remove dust from presence of workers in mills and factories.

E.—Water and its Work.

1. Apparatus to prove that water exerts pressure.
2. Apparatus to show that water pressure varies at different depths.
3. Solutions and tests (hard and soft water only).
4. A model hot-water boiler to show how it works.
5. Methods of conserving and reclaiming forest lands.

F.—Heat and its Work.

1. Some sources of heat and their uses to man.
2. A model hot-water system and demonstration.
3. The method of heat distribution in your home, school and church.

ART

INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

These courses are planned to give the student an introduction to and to provide a survey of the broad fields of subject matter in an art education. They are exploratory rather than exhaustive, giving the pupil some idea of the place art can fill in the life of the average individual. They are for all students, many of whom will not elect art as a vocation, but will be called upon to make choices between the beautiful and the commonplace. They are cultural in that they give the pupil a greater measure of appreciation of the beautiful in art, whether in the field of fine or industrial arts.

These courses are broad rather than intensive. The exercises include drawing and design, without which no course in art appreciation is possible. They are planned, not primarily to develop artistic ability, but rather to give opportunity for thinking, planning, judging, and deciding in terms of form and colour in life situations. The completed exercises should enable instructors to discover any students who have special ability in art, and along what lines. Such students should be encouraged to elect one or more of the special art courses offered in high schools, or to proceed at once to an art school. For those not specially talented the course provides a cultural training and a possible opportunity to develop leisure time interests, which are among the main aims of education, today. The creation of these interests may be a means of developing such hobbies as amateur photography, collecting prints and other works of art, drafting, stage

costume designing, horticulture and gardening, etc. Further objectives which merit careful consideration are the vocational and social objectives. The former aims to discover, conserve and direct the talent of specially gifted pupils so that it may be of value to industry; that is, to develop a realization of the significance of art in industry, a knowledge of the art possibilities of such raw materials as stone, clay, metal, wood, glass, and textiles, and an appreciation of the work of the designer, the draftsman and the commercial artist. The latter aims to develop a knowledge and understanding of art quality, that will function in the everyday life of the pupils so that they react to civic beauty, to beauty in home and surroundings, and to beauty in personal adornment. It may be emphasized that the aim of the art course is essentially to provide the children with the knowledge and skills which will be of value to them as citizens and as home-makers. (See General Statement, Introduction to the Elementary School Course, p. 195.)

The General Introduction to the Elementary School Art Course states that the following factors should be given due emphasis in a well-balanced curriculum:

(a) *The Knowledge Factor*, which requires that the child be armed with knowledge which will enable him to make wise choices and recognize "fitness to purpose."

(b) *The Appreciation Factor*, which provides an understanding of the principles of art structure, enabling the pupil to enjoy the expression of beauty in nature and in art.

(c) *The Creative Factor*, which requires that the pupil attempt to provide beauty in some form. Pupils here, as in the elementary school grades, should be encouraged to create freely. "Such experience enriches and expands the knowing and the enjoying aspects of art."

Whereas the creative factor has been given emphasis in the elementary grades, the appreciation and knowledge factors should receive more attention in the Intermediate School. There should still be due emphasis, however, upon creative experimentation.

2.—GENERAL CONTENT OF THE COURSES

These art courses, generally, are exploratory in nature. They provide instruction in the *elements* and *principles* of art—Drawing and Painting, Drafting, Design, Lettering and Colour—and make provision for the development of greater ability to appreciate beauty.

From the aesthetic point of view, the *Art Elements* are line and form, light and dark, colour and texture. These elements are best observed in the classic examples of the art of the past, or in those of outstanding merit in the present. An examination of these will reveal some elementary principles in their organization. To the pupil, these principles form the basis of judgment in the criticism of his own creations or those of others.

Design or Art Structure is fundamentally important. It is essential that young pupils gradually develop a feeling for design. Broadly speaking, the principles of design or art structure are Proportion, Dominance or Emphasis, Balance, Rhythm, Harmony and Unity. Each grade should review the principles previously taken. It is well, therefore, in connection with the exercises in design, that both the pupil and teacher secure as much good illustrative material as possible. This should

include examples of illustrations of architecture, sculpture, drawing, painting, historic ornament, textile designs, furniture and craftwork generally, as stated at the beginning of each of the courses.

Lettering is an important element of an art course. Good lettering should be legible, and fitted to its purpose. This requires that it be well-designed, and well rendered. Lettering may exist by itself, or it may be associated with decorative matter as in a book-jacket, poster or other similar forms of subject matter. Avoid eccentricity in the letter forms.

The use of lettering pens of various types is strongly recommended. The uniform line type of letter in the first year, and the Roman type for Grade IX are recommended. Only such variations from the standard type, as will best fit the purpose for which lettering is used, should be permitted.

Drawing is closely allied with design. Drawing may be taught from the literal point of view, or with the idea of expressing the significant qualities of an object. Hence in teaching the drawing of an object let it be sensed as one which has particular form and significance, and attempt to express this in appropriate line.

The "skill" aspect of drawing is very important. To be able to draw well requires a great amount of intelligent practice. If the pupil is taught to observe the significant features of an object, there will be less difficulty in drawing the object from memory. This technique of drawing should be encouraged.

To encourage careful observation, "snap-shot" or "short exposure drawing" should be practised. The object is viewed for a short period, attention being directed, through questioning and discussion, to the broad outlines and masses. The object is then sketched rapidly with broad vigorous strokes while it is *not in view*. A short period of re-examination of the object allows corrections to be made, and the eraser may be used here for the first time. A further short period of drawing with the object in sight permits the addition of details. The aim of this type of work is to encourage keen, intelligent, orderly observation—knowledge of what to look for first, second and third, and the ability to express this in bold vigorous strokes.

Imaginative or creative drawing should be encouraged. Opportunities must be provided for work in illustration in correlation with the other subjects, or from purely personal experience.

A type of work of interest to some students, mostly the older boys, is the more mechanical aspect of drawing. For these provision should be made by encouraging them to experiment in the field of mechanical drawing. Working drawings, plans carefully drawn to scale, etc., would offer outlets for their interests in these directions.

In the course which follows provision is made under some of the topics for work of the kind indicated above. Those pupils who manifest an interest in this type of work may be allowed to substitute it for the more creative aspects of the course.

Colour is now an important factor in all art teaching. This topic is introduced under the following sub-headings: (a) Characteristics of colour; (b) Colour grouping; (c) Colour harmony; and (d) Colour in everyday life. The first topic deals with colour characteristics—hue, value and intensity, warm and cool colours, advancing and receding colours. The second, "colour groupings," deals with a

study of different colours and their effect upon each other when combined in groups. These groups are generally known as the monochromatic grouping, complementary grouping, adjacent or analogous grouping. The third, "colour harmony," aims to show how the various colour groupings may be adjusted to produce a harmony. All these topics lead to the application of colour in everyday life. Colour in relation to home-art, to dress, to industrial arts should be considered.

THE COURSE IN ART FOR EITHER GRADE VII OR GRADE VIII

Introduction.

The aim in this year is to explore possible fields for the expansion of art interests, with the *vocational* and *social objectives* increasingly in mind. While in school pupils have neither the time nor the keen desire to undertake intensively any of the suggested activities, yet if the problem of the artist in industry is presented in an interesting way, some knowledge of the skills required by a successful worker may be gained, and a keener appreciation of the beauty of manufactured articles may be developed. Short discussions should be undertaken on such topics as "Arts and Crafts in the Middle Ages." "The contribution which Art makes to the beauty of such articles as automobiles, engines, the place of exact draftsmanship in manufacture, costumes, etc." The art quality in posters, illustrative advertisements, illustrated catalogues, etc., should be examined.

Two branches of *vocational art* should be given special consideration, namely, that of the commercial artist, who designs chiefly for reproduction in quantity (Printing Arts) and that of the industrial artist who designs articles for use in everyday life, as furniture, automobile bodies, rugs, textiles, etc.

Some outstanding qualities necessary for success in these fields as a vocational artist are: (1) Imagination and creative ability; (2) Ability to draw and design well; (3) A knowledge of the use to which an article is to be put; (4) Appreciation of the suitability of the design to the material.

Scrap-book Preparation.

Each pupil should collect and mount illustrations under suitable headings, on mounts of uniform size. If the mounts are the same size as the paper used for the drawing exercises, the work of the year, including the collection of illustrations, may be made into a booklet as follows:

Arrange the sheets of drawing exercises, notes, and the illustrations or as many of them as are desired, in proper order. Make two cardboard covers, with a hinge about one inch from the side, in a manner similar to a loose-leaf or ring-bound book. Punch five holes through the book as if for the insertion of rings. Rings may be used, or if a stronger binding is desired, lace tape through the holes and around the back of the book in the manner called "Japanese binding." The book will be solid and strong, and the leaves not likely to tear out when handled.

The cover may be made at any convenient period during the school year. It may be covered with heavy craft paper or wrapping paper, coarse linen or cotton, or any other suitable material, desired by the pupil. The cover-design should be completed before the book is inserted. Pockets may be made inside each cover, if so desired.

Illustrative Material.

Pupils should collect and mount, as stated in the preceding paragraphs, good illustrations of the following objects:

- (a) Snapshots or half-tone reproductions of landscapes, buildings, etc.
- (b) Illustrations of figure compositions, of one, two or three figures.
- (c) Illustrations of good page arrangement, of good lettering, particularly with a round-nib pen. Book-plates, monograms, etc.
- (d) Examples of good colour; of black with one colour, of black with two colours; of one-colour harmonies, of related harmonies, of contrasting harmonies.
- (e) Illustrations of many small articles found in the average home, as bowls, vases, rugs, etc.
- (f) Illustrations of objects used in transportation—automobiles, aeroplanes, steamships, engines, etc.—with emphasis upon improvements in appearance during the past few years. Working drawings of manufactured objects. Plans to scale of buildings and grounds.

NOTE.—*This illustrative material is for discussion only. At no time should pupils be allowed to copy this material.* It should be classified and mounted as stated in the preceding paragraph.

OUTLINE OF THE COURSE FOR EITHER GRADE VII OR GRADE VIII

1.—DRAWING.

The drawing in this grade should be largely illustrative. The teacher is referred to sections under "Drawing" in the Grade V and Grade VI course. Many of the forms there suggested may be redrawn in this grade with more attention to good proportion, balance, and finish and accuracy of detail. The drawing may be linked, very effectively, with the Social Studies, Literature, Science and other work of this grade.

Things to Draw.

Costumed figures, animals, simple objects connected with the modes of living or transportation, objects in nature, or objects typical of Western life—the water tower, elevator, prairie, depot, country school house, etc. Those interested may make working drawings of any objects desired within their capacity.

(The above drawings may be effectively used as motifs for design patterns, border or surface.)

Illustration with attention to Proportion, Balance, Dominance and Subordination.

This will require some practice in figure drawing as a preparatory step. Arrange compositions to include figure or figures. Add suitable surroundings. The work in Social Studies, Literature, and Health, or seasonal sports and activities, will suggest interesting themes for illustration. Good balance in the colours used is an important feature in the exercise.

2.—COLOUR.

Characteristics of Colour, Colour Groupings, Colour Harmonies.

It is not the intention to segregate colour into one division. It is thought best that the teacher should review the fundamental and practical aspects of colour.

(1) Discuss such problems as:

- (a) What is colour? Its source? What are the spectrum hues?
- (b) What are colour pigments? What are primary and secondary hues?
(The teacher should use a colour circle to explain colour theory. Charts of coloured paper are suggested.)
- (c) Discuss the colour quality of "Value" using a neutral scale of five steps? What are the tints and shades of colours? How are they made?
- (d) Discuss the colour quality of "Intensity." How are colour intensities made?
- (e) Name the warm and the cool colours. Why so called? (If the pupils are not familiar with colour mixing, opportunities should be given for mixing colours, for applying colour washes, and for matching colours.

(2) Study the different colours and their effect on each other when combined in groups.

- (a) Monochromatic, or "One-colour grouping."
- (b) Complementary or "Contrast grouping."
- (c) Adjacent or "Analogous grouping."

(3) These colour groups are not necessarily harmonious, unless adjusted properly. Generally one colour should be dominant. A small amount of brilliant colour balanced by a larger amount of a grayed or softened colour tends to produce harmony. Sometimes a harmony is brought about by adding a little of one colour to the other.

Colour experimentation should be carried out in connection with the work in design. Pupils should be encouraged to work out a design in various colour schemes and colour values to see the possibilities of colour in relation to design. The laying on of flat washes of light tones for completing working drawings should be practised.

3.—DESIGN.

Principles of Proportion, Balance, Dominance and Subordination.

A.—Arrange regular shapes within self-contained areas, with attention to proportion, dominance and subordination, balance.

Using cut-paper vase shapes or a tea-set (teapot, cream pitcher, sugar bowl, cup and saucer, etc.), work out pleasing compositions within a given area. Cut these to show various pleasing well-proportioned shapes. Arrange in groups of two or three within a given area, to illustrate good balance and proportion, dominance and subordination. Finish in black and white and gray; or black and white and one bright colour.

B.—Arrange irregular shapes, with attention to proportion, balance, dominance and subordination.

Arrange the elements of a simple landscape composition, using cut-paper as follows:

- (a) Compose a landscape in black, white and gray.
- (b) Compose a landscape in black, white and one bright colour.
- (c) Compose a landscape in black, white, gray and with two contrasting colours.

C.—Illustrative Design with attention to proportion and balance, dominance and subordination.

This work will require some practice in figure drawing as a preparatory step. Using cut-paper shapes, arrange compositions to include a figure or figures. Add suitable surroundings. The work in Social Studies, Literature and Health, or seasonal sports and activities, will suggest suitable themes for illustrations. Good balance in the colours used is an important feature in the exercise. By the addition of cut-paper letters, effective posters or book-cover designs will result.

(Encourage free experimentation here. Open-forum discussions on the results.)

D.—Commercial Design. Lettering with attention to proportion, balance, dominance and subordination.

(It is recommended that each pupil have experience in handling the round-nib pen. Easterbrook's Drawlet pen, or Hunt Pen Co.'s Speedball pens, or similar pens of any other make are recommended.)

Practice exercises making freehand vertical strokes, horizontal strokes, or curved strokes, using guide lines.

(1) Make a line-alphabet of capitals, small letters and figures and letter several words showing the following modification of letter shapes:

- (a) An increase in the height of the letters.
- (b) An increase in the width of the letters.
- (c) An increase in the width of the vertical strokes.
- (d) A narrowing of the straight letters and a widening of the round letters.
- (e) A raising of the waist-line of the letters; a lowering of it.

(2) Design and letter greeting cards, place cards, tallies.

(3) Experiment with the introduction of pattern and colour within the letter as a variant from the solid stroke. Ideas for such patterns may be suggested by the theme of the advertisement for which the lettering is intended.

(4) Design monograms that may be used for sports costumes, school blazers, pennants, etc.

(5) Using capital letters, repeat such words as NON, BOB, MOON, etc., to fill a rectangle, letters and lines touching.

- (a) Even spacing (every letter the same width).
- (b) Open-closed spacing (round letters wider).

In the above exercises try straight repeat and alternate repeat.

(6) Using straight lines, vertical, horizontal, oblique, or curved lines (regular or irregular), plan abstract borders or surface patterns. Endless possibilities for creative work are here.

(7) Make line capitals and small letters suitable for use on working drawings.

(In the preceding exercises interesting and tasteful use of colour will add materially to the effectiveness of the work.)

E.—Industrial Design.

1. **CONSTRUCTIVE DESIGN.** The industrial designer considers "the purpose of the article," "the nature of the material from which it is made," and "the problem of making it pleasing in appearance." Each of these aspects should be discussed and suitable illustrative material should be used.

Discuss also the question: "Is the artist today more important in industry than ever before?" Use suitable illustrative material—automobiles, aeroplanes, furniture, in the discussion.

(a) As an activity, have pupils collect illustrations of objects showing the evolutionary changes or modifications and improvement in design to meet the needs of utility and beauty—"fitness to purpose." Examples—automobiles, aeroplanes, railroad trains, steamships, buildings, articles of furniture, electrical equipment, personal apparel, etc.

(b) Design a mural panel or a frieze to show the evolutionary changes in transportation, in costume, in habitation. Different members may assist in each if so desired. Experiment with a panel or frieze in relief (salt and flour mixture).

(c) Have pupils design one article to illustrate the principles of balance, proportion, dominance and subordination, and to demonstrate "fitness to purpose." The materials used may be clay, papier-mâché, wood, cement, cloth, wool, or any others available. Encourage experimentation here and freedom of choices. Hold each individual responsible for the making of some one article—the taste of the boy and the girl to be considered in each case. There is opportunity here for the making of careful working drawings by those interested in this aspect of the work.

(d) To correlate with the work of literature or dramatics the designing of puppets and a puppet stage is a suggested activity. This offers ample scope for experimentation and creative work. Suggested media are soft wood, salt and flour mixture and wax finish. For a helpful book of directions see bibliography.

(e) To correlate with the music course the making and decorating of bamboo pipes for a pipe band is an activity which should prove interesting. The teacher is referred to the bibliography for helpful reference books on this work.

2. **DECORATIVE DESIGN.** The decorative designer considers *whether a decoration would improve the appearance of the article*, then *the kind of decoration which would be most appropriate*, and lastly, *the motif for the design which would be most suitable*. Using these as topics, examine the decorative qualities of articles of everyday household use. Consider the suitability of the decoration to the article. Encourage free critical discussion. Examine such articles as dishes, silverware, kitchen utensils, of ornaments such as flower vases, lampshades, cushions, upholstery, wall hanging or panel, etc.

(a) Select from the home any one article such as those mentioned above, and work out a decorative design which will illustrate suitability of decoration to the nature of the material, and to the purpose for which the article is to be used.

3. **APPRECIATION.** The following pictures are suggested for study. Picture Study need not be confined to these pictures only, or to one particular time, but may be carried on at opportune occasions throughout the year.

For study, secure coloured prints, either in miniature or, better yet, of a size about 6 by 8 inches.

Select five pictures from group "A" and five from group "B".

GROUP "A"

The Mill, by Ruisdael
Avenue of Trees, by Hobbema
The Poplars, by Monet
Portrait of Mother, by Whistler
St. Genevieve, by Chavannes
Woman Churning, by Millet

GROUP "B"—Canadian Art

West Wind, by Thompson
Prospector's Camp, by O'Brien
Returning from Mass, by Robinson
Woodland Interior, by Jeffreys
Evening after Rain, by Watson
On the St. Lawrence, by Cullen.

GRADE IX

Introduction.

As the final year in the Intermediate school will be the last for many pupils, the art course should have practical and social objectives in harmony with those of the other subjects. To this end it should consist of topics closely related to the life of the average citizen. While the merchant is interested in having his goods artistically and attractively displayed, and the manufacturer in producing articles attractively designed, the average citizen is concerned with his personal appearance and the beauty of home and surroundings. Therefore the purpose of this art course is to show the relationship of the art principles already studied to problems relating to costume, the home and environment, and to the community.

It is well for teachers to realize that a formal or academic treatment of the topics will defeat the whole purpose of the course. Art should be closely related, and in a practical manner, to the Social Studies and to the Drama. An informal approach could be through occasional discussion or open-forum periods in which such topics as the following, and others, may be considered:

1. The value of attractive buildings to a community (Civic need for Art).
2. The relationship of attractive buildings and surroundings to tourist traffic (Economic need).
3. The effect of attractive clothes and personal belongings upon our feelings of self-respect, prestige, etc. (Personal or Social need.)
4. The effect of attractive surroundings upon standards of living and conduct. (Spiritual need.)

In the hands of an enthusiastic teacher, understanding of the relationship of art to everyday life can be made most interesting and beneficial to the individual and to the community as a whole.

The following quotation is from an article by Sibyl Browne in "Progressive Education", March, 1934:

"The new school stands for interactive growth between the child and surrounding life. It consequently demands that art for its boys and girls be more than an accomplishment, more than a motor overflow, mere response to directions, or illustration of subject matter of other classes. It calls urgently for art both as a personally enriching experience and as a means of active contact with the developing social fabric. But Art as a vitalizing force within the individual cannot be separated from Art as a link with society, for fuller personal development comes only with articulation *with* the environment.

"If the new school really wants are to bring functional development, it must seek such ways of weaving the staunch and glorious threads of art into the fabric of school life as will intensify and better living."

NOTE.—In planning the time-table for the Intermediate school, it is urged that principals should assign a much longer period than the customary 30 or 33 minutes—a double period twice per week would much better meet the need here.

Illustrative Material.

(See introduction to the course for the Intermediate School.)

Both the teacher and the pupils should make such collections of illustrative material as the following:

1. Illustrations of the bungalow type of house, and of floor plan for these houses. Exterior views of churches, schools, banks and other public buildings in the locality; carefully planned views of front and side elevations.

2. Illustrations from magazines, paint companies, and other sources showing the effective use of colour for the exteriors of houses and other buildings; front and side elevations to scale.

3. Illustrations of well-arranged grounds, both rural and urban, showing arrangements of walks, trees, shrubs, hedges, flowers; ground plans to scale.

4. Illustrations of interiors, showing furnishings and colour schemes, types of furniture, the arrangement of furniture in the room.

5. Illustrations of any of the decorative manufactured objects found in the average home, to show interesting qualities in colour and design. Examples or illustrations of well designed home-craft work.

6. Colour prints (miniatures of pictures) which would be suitable for different rooms in the house.

7. Illustrations of costumes for boys and girls, of sports costumes, and of clothing accessories; historic costumes for work in Dramatics, Social Studies, etc.

8. Illustrations of good lettering on greeting cards, announcements, etc. Good examples of medieval and modern lettering, particularly that done with a broad-nib or manuscript pen; good examples of lettering suitable for working drawings.

9. Illustrations of borders and all-over patterns.

This material is to be used for the purposes of discussion and illustration only. In no instance should it be copied. It should be mounted on craft paper of the same size as drawing paper, and kept in the same portfolio as the regular drawings. Larger illustrations may be carefully mounted and kept on file in the school filing box.

1.—Principles of Design.

A study of the main principles of design in relation to objects in everyday surroundings.

(a) Review the principles stressed in the preceding grades—proportion, balance, dominance or emphasis, subordination. Use well-chosen illustrations of costumes, furniture, house interiors, house exteriors, public buildings, etc., to exemplify the principles above mentioned.

(b) Pupils should examine illustrative material collected in this or in the preceding years, with reference to the above-named principles, and label any specific examples as good or bad, giving reasons for the decision.

(c) Introduce the principles of Repetition and Rhythm, Harmony and Unity, using the above materials, as well as the pictures on the course to exemplify them.

2.—Colour.

Colour in everyday life.

(a) Review the simple colour theory of the preceding grades. Introduce split-complementary harmony.

(b) Discuss appropriate harmonies suitable for interior decoration, house painting, costume, garden planning, etc. Name colour harmonies found in your illustrative material.

(c) Consider warm and cool colours, advancing and receding colours.

List for reference suitable colour schemes for a living-room, a dining-room, a kitchen or a bedroom with specific reference to the direction in which the room faces—north or south, etc. List pleasing colour schemes for home exteriors (house, trim, and roof). List pleasing colour combinations for colour ensembles. List pleasing colour combinations for completing working drawings.

3.—Lettering.

The everyday use of lettering.

Collect and study good examples of manuscript writing, of announcements, bulletins, posters, etc.

It is well to encourage pupils to develop a good *vertical* style of lettering, which is individual in character without being extreme. There should be a definite carry-over into the lettering needs of all subjects, while the school activities should provide steady motivation.

Activities.

The activities suggested below have been planned to provide opportunities for the practical application of the principles outlined above and to demonstrate the close relationship existing among the various types of art experience—drawing, drafting, design, lettering, colour, etc. Pupils should be encouraged to experiment and to introduce into their work the creative element. The development of their own ideas is the desired end.

The number of problems completed during the year is left to the teacher's discretion, but it is expected that pupils will have experience in the following fields of art expression:

- (a) Drawing—representative, memory, imaginative.
- (b) Design—structural and decorative.
- (c) Composition.
- (d) Drafting or mechanical drawing.
- (e) Lettering.
- (f) Colour.
- (g) Craftwork.
- (h) Appreciation.

A.—Costume.

(a) Consideration of the use of patterned material in relation to costume and the figure. The suitable use of stripes, plaids, flowered and plain material, etc., for different types of figures—tall and slender, short and stout, etc.

(b) Colour in relation to costume. The use of bright and grayed colours. Relation of colour to the type and personality (complexion, hair, eyes, etc.).

(c) Consideration of *line* in relation to the figure.

Suggested Activities.

(a) Simple figure drawing as in Division II of the Elementary School with emphasis upon proportion and action.

(b) Planning a costume for some particular purpose, a play, a pageant, a carnival, etc. Social Studies and Dramatics provide motivation.

(c) Planning and making a poster or announcement for a fashion display, a pageant, a play, a carnival. This will include design and lettering. It will relate closely to the work in Social Studies and Dramatics. Lettering for mechanical drawing—plans, sketches, etc.

(d) Designing a costume for a sports occasion, hockey, skiing, basketball, etc.; relation here to health.

(e) Making all-over patterns from abstract designs, figures, animals, or other objects suitable for costume materials. (Potato printing is suggested.)

NOTE.—In every case the finished design should be subject to critical examination by the class in a short open-forum period. Any accepted designs may be worked out in appropriate material: e.g., dresses may be made for use in plays and pageants being presented by the class in Dramatics.

B.—House and Grounds.

Discuss such questions as the following:

(a) Is it financially and socially worth while to have pleasing home surroundings?

(b) Do attractive homes and grounds appeal to the tourist—yourself when travelling? Why?

(c) What is there about some houses that makes them more pleasing (attractive) than others? Can you express this “something” in terms of the principles (laws) of design?

(d) Criticise the planning of your own town or village and say how improvement might be effected. (Open-forum debate.)

(e) Consider the improvement of your school house or church in the light of the conclusions you have reached. Make a quick sketch to illustrate your ideas. (Open-forum debate.)

Consideration of plans drawn up by house and town planning commissions might help in this section.

Suggested Problems.

(a) Draw a lot or area to any convenient scale, having in mind a local situation, urban or rural. Show on this plan the location of the buildings.

Plan the lot or area to the best advantage, showing the location of the garden, grass plots, walks, shrubbery, fences, etc. Colour with wash and add necessary legends neatly in capital letters.

Criticise the work from time to time on the basis of the principles of design studied. Reconstruct where necessary. In the above, consider the direction in which the house faces, the proper location of barns, garages and other buildings. Make careful scale drawings and plans if desired.

(Many popular magazines feature excellent illustrative articles on this subject.)

(b) Make a floor plan of the house to meet the particular requirements of the family concerned. Use squared section-paper. Discuss the size, placing and arrangement of the various rooms and passages, giving ample opportunity for exchange of views and for improvement in designs. Redraw these carefully to scale if desired.

(c) Make quick sketches to show the appearance of the front or side view (or both) of the house. The placing of trees and shrubbery should be shown. Consider the sketches to see that the principles of balance and proportion have been kept in mind.

(d) Discuss and experiment with colour schemes for exteriors to obtain pleasing effects. Criticise tentative plans. Complete carefully a sketch in the chosen colour scheme.

NOTE.—Much of the above would be more beneficial if undertaken as a group exercise. For the more manual-minded pupils the actual construction, to a suitable scale and on a suitable surface, of the house and grounds would be a valuable activity. An excellent opportunity for experimenting with a variety of materials is offered here. Careful working drawings may be made by any pupil interested in this phase of the work.

C.—The Home Interior.

Discuss the essential characteristics of the living room—restfulness, cheer and comfort. The well-planned living room furnishes an example of good composition and the tasteful use of colour. The consideration of the problem offers opportunities for class discussion. Discuss the principles of design in relation to the planning of the living room: (1) The centre of interest, which may be a fireplace, a dominating piece of furniture, a picture, or a group of windows; (2) the grouping of the articles of furniture to secure balance, harmony and unity. Make floor plan.

Discuss the choice and arrangement of pictures, their position, size, colour and framing.

Discuss the use of textiles—decorative quality, the restrained use of patterned materials in drapes and upholstery.

Discuss the use of colour to secure an atmosphere of restfulness and cheer with sufficient contrast to prevent monotony.

Suggested Problems.

(a) *Planning and making to scale a miniature living room.* The boys construct the room (of three-ply veneer or heavy cardboard), the girls the furnishings. Class discussions should be held, and various arrangements should be tried out following these discussions. Committees undertake various parts of the problem. There may be several sets of furnishings made showing different colour schemes. The class discuss the particular merits and demerits of each in order to select the

most pleasing. Boys skilled in woodwork may be encouraged to make the furniture of wood and to upholster certain of the objects, e.g., chairs, etc.

(b) Select and frame, or mount on suitable mats, well-proportioned, pictures of suitable subjects, style and colour.

(c) Plan designs for various textile materials, using potato or linoleum blocks. Simple colour schemes suitable for the drapes may be worked out by experiment. The same design may be repeated in different colour arrangements and a choice be made. Use only abstract designs.

Any other room may be designed in the same way as an alternative or an additional problem—a bedroom for a boy or for a girl, a kitchen, etc. Experiment with colour schemes in flat tones. Motifs, if used, should be of the abstract type.

D.—Stage Craft.

In schools where the Dramatics option is being offered, problems of stagecraft may be undertaken in a manner similar to the planning and furnishing of the house in the exercise above. Satisfactory progress will be achieved when the Art teacher is also the teacher of Dramatics, or where there is close co-operation between the two.

Suggested Problems.

(a) *The planning and making to scale of a miniature stage for a play that is being offered.*

The following topics should be discussed:

1. The type of setting in relation to the play to be presented—naturalistic or conventional (modernistic).
2. The style of costume in relation to the play.
3. The use of colour in both scenery and costume as an aid to interpretation.

The making of the stage may be undertaken by a committee of boys. The designing of settings and costumes could be undertaken by other groups. The making and designing of necessary properties is another phase of the work.

The principles of design and of colour harmony should be exemplified in the finished model. When dramatic performances are being given the stage setting and costumes should be as planned in the model.

E.—Craft Problems.

Pupils who have a liking for handicrafts may be encouraged to experiment with various media according to their preference.

(a) *Modelling.* Modelling on plaques or in-the-round. The making and decorating of small bowls and vases may be undertaken. Various media may be tried out, as clay, papier-mâché, salt and flour, paraffin, or paraffin with a little glycerine, in which a little wax crayon has been melted to give it colour, etc.

(b) To correlate with the music course, the making and decorating of bamboo pipes for a pipe band is an activity that should prove interesting. The teacher is referred to the bibliography for helpful reference books on this work.

(c) *Printing and Print Making* by wood-block, lino-cut; or by etching on celluloid, or on zinc; or the use of stencils may be experimented with.

(d) *Textile Decoration.* The designing of panels by the use of appliqué, or by using wax crayons set with a hot iron. Use monk's cloth or heavy linen, or other suitable material. Hooked rugs offer opportunities for interesting work.

(e) *Dyeing.* Tied and dyed work, and batik, are very interesting.

F.—Lettering.

Since it is desirable that pupils should acquire facility in lettering, every opportunity should be seized to provide practice. This practice need not be confined to art activities, as other subjects, particularly science and the social studies, require careful lettering from time to time. It is suggested that the broad-nib or manuscript pen be used in this work.

Activities.

(a) A greeting card, to include outside design and greeting with suitably lettered verse within. The lettering should be well placed and compactly spaced. The potato block print, lino-cut (linoleum-cut) is an interesting medium with which to experiment.

(b) A book-plate may be an alternative problem.

(c) A portfolio cover.

G.—Drawing: Representative, Imaginative, Creative.

Those children who demonstrate special ability may be encouraged to develop this part of the course more fully than those less talented. All should be encouraged to attempt some creative or imaginative work, however, which may be developed out of their representative drawings.

Drawings should be large and freely rendered, the media used being crayon and coloured chalk, brush and ink, charcoal, etc. Easels and drawing boards, if available, should add to the ease with which the drawings could be rendered. (A plain flat board, or even heavy cardboard in the chalk rail, will serve as a good drawing board.)

Themes selected from the work in literature, science, social studies, dramatics and health can be experimented with. The motivation may be found in the desire to beautify the classroom, by the decoration of blackboards, wall spaces, etc., using the frieze, the panel, the mural, etc.

H.—Appreciation.

The following pictures are suggested for study. Picture Study need not be confined to these pictures only. For study secure coloured prints in miniature, one for each pupil, or better yet, prints 6"×8".

Select five pictures from Group A and five from Group B.

GROUP A

Spring, or Morning at the Lake, by
Corot
Harp, or the Winds, by Martin
Christ among the Doctors, by Hoffman
Sistine Madonna, by Raphael
The Boat, by Monet
The Blue Boy, by Gainsborough.

GROUP B (Canadian)

Jack Pine, by Thompson
The Beaver Dam, by J. E. H. Macdonald
North of Lake Superior, by Harris
Coming of the White Man, by Reid.
Beech Woods, by Beattie
Horse Racing in Winter, by Gagnon

Materials

1. Drawing paper, 9×12 or 12×18; heavy craft paper of similar size for mounting illustrative material.
2. Square-section paper, 9×12, with $\frac{1}{8}$ inch section.
3. Black, white and gray paper for cutting.
4. Coloured paper, assorted colours, for cutting.
5. Scissors, and paste or mucilage in bottles.
6. Materials for craft problems should be procured locally in most instances.
7. Colours, either tempera colours or water colours, brushes, one No. 7 and one No. 4.
8. India ink, HB pencil, ruler and a soft eraser.
9. Round-nib pens,—a small, a medium and a large size, a penholder.
10. Broad-nib or manuscript pens, a small, a medium and a large width, penholders. (A brass reservoir attached to the pen-nib is serviceable.)
11. Colour prints; each pupil should have the miniature size at least, 3×4½ inches. A larger size, about 8×19, may be had for small classes.
12. For those interested in mechanical drawings, a small drawing board, T-square and triangles are necessary.

Bibliography

REFERENCE BOOKS:

1. An Introduction to Art Education—Whitford.
2. Enjoyment and Use of Colour—Sargent.
3. Writing, Illuminating and Lettering—Johnston.
4. P's and Q's—Tannahill.
5. Applied Drawing—Brown.
6. Art for Schools and Colleges—Smyth.
7. Art in Everyday Life—H. and V. Goldstein.
8. Art in Home and Clothing—Trilling and Williams.
9. Design for Small Properties—Bottomley.
10. Beautifying the Home Grounds of Canada—Howitt.
11. Blockprinting with Linoleum—Howard Hunt Pen Co.
12. Appreciation of Pictures—Klar and Dilliway.
13. Puppets, a Handbook of Marionettes—Hamburg Puppet Guild Co.
14. The Pipers' Guild Handbook—Margaret Jamse.
15. The Art Teacher—Lemos. (A general encyclopedic volume on art teaching.)

BOOKS FOR BROADER READING:

1. Colour in Everyday Life—Weinberg (Dodd Mead & Co.).
2. More Colour to You—Welling (Practical School Supply Co.).
3. Classroom Teacher—Whitford and Todd, Vol. II.
4. How to Enjoy Pictures—Littlejohn (Macmillan Co.).
5. The Young Architects—Stanley-Brown (Harper & Bros.).
6. Making Musical Pipes—Halliday.
7. Essentials of Design—DeGarmo and Wilson (Macmillan Co.).
8. The Young Decorators—McClelland (Harper and Bros.).
9. Flower Arrangement—Rockwell and Grayson (Macmillan Co.).

10. Art Training through Home Problems—Russell and Wilson (Manual Arts Press).
11. The School Arts Magazine—Davis Press, Worcester.
12. The Art of Lettering—Svenson.
13. Historic Costume—Lester (Manual Arts Press).

DRAMATICS

Dramatics is the creative enjoyment of literature through self-expression, and co-operative effort. Like all the arts, it has enjoyment as its primary purpose; like all the arts also, it demands patience, sincerity and hard work. More than any other art, it combines many activities, including acting, stage-managing, lighting, costuming; and certainly it provides unlimited opportunity for group discipline and co-operation.

Owing to the large amount of work to be covered and the need for repeated practice in Voice and Body exercises, the course in Dramatics should be allotted no fewer than four periods per week.

The number of pupils in each Dramatics class should not exceed twenty. A greater enrolment than this would make rehearsals difficult, if not impossible. A class of fifteen pupils would be nearly ideal.

In the widely dispersed and often poorly equipped rural schools of the Province, teachers will have to use imagination and ingenuity in adapting the course to circumstances. Even in the cities, the lack of space and equipment will prove a challenge to their resourcefulness. Of necessity, therefore, the course in Dramatics is tentative and experimental. It is hoped that teachers will experiment freely, and in the larger centres especially, exercise their initiative and ingenuity as far as time and facilities will permit.

Teachers are asked to use this outline merely as a guide: not as a yardstick of achievement, nor as a body of material that must be "covered" word by word, and line by line. The course is not to consist of topics, either technical or informational, but of plays. It must not become academic in any sense of the word, nor, on the other hand, must it degenerate into merely "putting on a play"—saying lines, and strutting on the stage.

The teacher is free to teach as much or as little of the work outlined in this course as he thinks best for his own class. He may also cover the material in whatever order he wishes, allotting as much or as little time as he thinks best to each section of the work. For those who will cover the entire course and feel the need of guidance, the following division of time is offered, merely as a suggestion and not as a requirement:

FIRST TERM (13 weeks)

1. Voice and Diction—2 weeks—8 lessons.
2. Appreciation—2 weeks—8 lessons.
3. Scrap-books—started early and continued to the end of the term.
4. Acting—4 weeks—16 lessons.
5. Producing a Play—the balance of the First Term.

SECOND TERM (18 weeks)

6. Setting—3 weeks—12 lessons.
7. Make-up and Costume—3 weeks—12 lessons.
8. Lighting—1 week—4 lessons.
9. Direction—6 weeks—24 lessons.
10. Producing a Play—the remainder of the Second Term.

The material outlined below is for *all three intermediate grades*. No strict division of this material by grades is imposed. This allows teachers in smaller, and ungraded schools, to include all intermediate pupils in one class, if they so desire. Where separate classes are conducted for each grade, the work might be divided as follows:

Grade VII:

Voice and Diction.

Appreciation.

Scrap-books.

Acting.

Producing Plays.

No formal work in Setting, Make-up, Costume, Lighting, and Direction need be attempted. Such work as this should only be incidental to the producing of plays. The greatest emphasis in this grade should be placed on Voice and Diction and Acting. But great care should be observed to prevent the work from narrowing into a mere course in Elocution.

Grade VIII:

The work of this grade should be much the same as that of Grade VII, with a little more emphasis on Appreciation, and as much or as little more work as desired on the technical sections of the course. Emphasis should be placed on Voice and Diction and Acting.

Grade IX:

In this grade there should be a choice of work from the entire Outline printed below, with emphasis still being placed on Voice, Diction and Acting.

A course in dramatics should be integrated with other material of the curriculum, serving as an enterprise centre for the teaching of as many things as possible. This will train the students in good use of the voice, by furnishing a freedom and range of expression that cannot be found within the limits of the work in Oral Language; and it will also bring students into contact with a large body of experience and of fact outside the usual categories of school curricula.

In addition to the list of plays recommended for production, teachers will find material for dramatization in the Literature and Social Studies of the Grade IX programme. This creative activity of dramatization by the class should not be overlooked. Examples of this type of work can be found in "Playmaking and Plays," by Merrill and Fleming.

Recommended Textbook of Plays:

GRADES VII and VIII—"Eight New Plays for Boys and Girls," edited by John Bourne—Lovat Dickson.

GRADE IX—"8 New One-Act Plays of 1933," edited by John Bourne—Lovat Dickson.

"Short Modern Plays," by Boas—Macmillan Co.

Since the course does not consist of formal lectures on such technical matters as stage decor, lighting, plot structure, etc., no other textbook has been prescribed for use by the students.

TEACHERS' REFERENCES:

"The Stage and the School," by Ommanney.

"The Players Handbook," by Selden—Crofts Publishing Co.

"Drama and Dramatics," by Fish—Macmillan Co.

Objectives.

1. To provide for the students opportunities for creative enjoyment.
2. To continue and develop the work in dramatization early begun in the elementary schools, with the purpose of stimulating the imagination, encouraging self-expression, developing self-assurance and character, and inculcating social and moral ideals.
3. To integrate Dramatics with other materials of the curriculum.
4. To impart an elementary knowledge of the arts of the theatre.
5. To provide as much opportunity as possible for the students to act, the technical details of the art being taught gradually and to some extent incidentally. This technique will include correct posture, voice production, enunciation, poise, self-control, stage grouping, stage mechanics.
6. To familiarize the students with some good plays, and to develop their ability to read and to view plays with critical appreciation.
7. To assist the pupils in developing grace of speech and grace of movement, through dramatic activity.
8. The correlation of the work in Dramatics with the other school subjects: General Science (stage lighting, sound effects and acoustics, special stage effects).

Manual Arts (stage-craft and properties).

Dress-making (historical and other costumes and their improvisation).

Junior Business (typing manuscripts, business management of plays in production).

9. To develop a sense of leadership and responsibility by putting students in charge of direction, stage-management, stage-craft and committees on costuming, properties and business management.

It is not proposed to train finished actors, but rather to prepare each pupil to face life freed from handicaps of voice, diction and bearing; and to train him to think clearly, analyze carefully and use judgment and initiative in handling the problems that confront him.

The keynote of the course is sincerity. *Disapproval of artificiality cannot be too strong.*

OUTLINE OF COURSE

I.—Voice and Diction.

Voice:

1. Mechanism of the voice. Use a chart such as the one on Page 134 of "The Stage and the School" (Ommanney).

2. Correct breathing (central breathing) to get volume control, etc.
3. Quality, pitch, modulation (inflection).

Diction:

1. Improvement of enunciation and pronunciation.
2. Vowel sounds. Learn to distinguish more vowel sounds than are ordinarily recognized and used.
3. Consonants. Practise careful articulation to make consonants clear-cut.
4. Strive to correct such common errors as—
 "jist" for "just";
 "becuz" for "because";
 "uv" for "of";
 "fer" for "for";
 "teh" for "to";
 "gonna" for "going to."

(These are some of the worst, but the list can be extended to take in many others.)

REFERENCES:

Exercises: "The Stage and the School," by Ommanney.

Voice and Diction: "Voice and Speech Problems," by Raubcheck-Davis-Carll.

II.—Appreciation.

In view of the fact that students of the Intermediate School, being of an age between 12 and 15, are in a special class from the point of emotional development, it is important that plays for study and production be chosen with a view to their suitability for this particular age-group.

While it is true that small children are sometimes able to portray adult emotions with considerable facility, it must be recognized that this performance is largely imitative with little appreciation of the emotions portrayed. The intermediate school child, on the other hand, is just becoming aware of these specifically adult emotions and is usually a little shy of them. It would seem a mistake to introduce the dramatics class at this stage to plays representing conflicts which involve the deeper human emotions—sociological plays, tragedies or intricate problem plays.

Plays most suitable for this age are lighter comedies, farces, fantasies, historical and biographical plays.

1. The play should be read first. (Some teachers may prefer to read it aloud to the class; others will prefer having the class read it silently. Where the teacher does the reading there is the danger that the imitative children will adopt the teacher's style and develop nothing for themselves.)

Play 1.

2. Class discussion of the play for type, plot, characterization, setting.
3. Select a cast and have them read the play aloud, giving attention to voice, diction, characterization, etc.
4. Friendly discussion and constructive criticism.

5. A second reading of the play by a different group. The pupils may make the selection of the readers, or there may be volunteers for the various parts.

Play 2.

6. Read another one-act play, following the same procedure as for the first; *or*

Read several one-act plays silently with a short discussion afterwards.

Pupils may prepare to discuss or criticize orally a play they have seen.

REFERENCE: "Drama and Dramatics," by Helen Randle Fish.

III.—Scrap-books:

Part of the course should consist in the preparation of a scrap-book containing material on the history of costumes in definite periods, on furniture, modes of hairdressing, types of physiognomy, etc. This will be the student's work-book, and will be open to inspection.

They may keep a bulletin board on which will be posted any dramatic or literary news of interest.

1. *First method*: Encourage each pupil to keep a scrap-book for himself. This method becomes difficult in a large class.
2. *Second method*: Have only a class scrap-book, to which each pupil will try to contribute.

3. The scrap-book may be of the ordinary kind, into which the material is pasted; *or*

It may be a collection of "mounts." The latter type of book is constructed in the following way. Let all the pupils mount their contributions (articles, sketches, illustrations of costume, etc.) on pieces of stiff paper, all of the same size. These may be set up for inspection or reference, and later tied or bound together to form the scrap-book, and at the end of the term the pupils may take their mounts away if they wish.

REFERENCE: "The Stage and the School," by Ommanney.

IV.—Acting.

(Teach only the essentials of stage deportment and movement.)

1. Posture; correct standing, sitting, walking, crossing the stage.
2. Pantomime:
 - (a) Facial expression (precedes action).
 - (b) Gesture. (Arm movements begin at shoulder. Wrist leads in gesture of hand. Use upstage arm for gestures whenever possible.)
 - (c) Use of pantomime to express emotion. Positive emotions, such as courage, expressed by free and unhampered posture and action; negative emotions, such as fear, expressed by restricted posture and action.
3. Movement on the stage must be limited to what is essential. Every movement must have a reason; but do not have an actor move every time he has the chance, even with a reason, or rhythm will become merely restlessness.
4. Keep the stage balanced.

5. Avoid masking.
6. Pick up cues quickly.
7. Keep in character.

Teach only a few elementary rules, keeping the language simple.

Pupils may prepare to give pantomimes and interpretive play readings during the term.

REFERENCES:

"The Player's Handbook," by Selden.

"The Stage and the School," by Ommanney.

Note.—It is recommended that every teacher have access to these two books, whether or not any other reference books are available. They will be found useful in all phases of acting.

"Drama and Dramatics," by Fish.

"Amateur Acting and Play Production," by Wayne Campbell.

"The Art of Pantomime," by Aubert.

V.—Producing a Play:

Play 3;

1. Read and discuss, as for Play 1.
2. Cast, using the whole class and thus having several groups each working on the play. Special attention must now be given to voice, diction, and acting.

Or Play 1 or 2, if teacher or class prefers.

(This play may be presented at the Christmas "Lit" or concert.)

REFERENCES:

"Amateur Acting and Play Production," by Wayne Campbell.

"The Art of Play Production," by John Dolman, jr.

VI.—Setting.

For the discussion of principles involved in stage setting, use several plays, including the ones studied and some new ones.

The perfect set should form an appropriate background for the mood of the play, and should satisfy the eye of the spectator.

Study illustrations of exterior and interior settings. Pupils should be encouraged to collect illustrations for themselves.

1. Show the significance of the straight and the curved line.
2. Show what is accomplished by a variety of playing levels.
3. Study the placing of entrances and exits, and of windows, alcoves, doors, etc.
4. The use of elements such as steps, pillar pieces, etc.
5. Colour in sets. (The background should be kept neutral.)
6. The placing of furniture.
7. The pupils should be required to design one or two sets. They should design the best sets possible and then adapt them to the limitations of their own stage. The designs should be as simple as possible, but nevertheless have some beauty.

It is possible to teach the pupils the actual construction of flats, etc., if time allows. They would perhaps be interested in designing and making the set for the final play.

The construction of a miniature stage may be one of the class activities; but only when the stage is related to a play actually in the course of production by the class.

REFERENCES:

"Amateur Acting and Play Production," by Wayne Campbell.

"Scenery Simplified," by Webster and Wetzel.

"Modern Theatre Practice," Heffner, Selden and Sellman.

VII.—Make-up and Costume.

1. Make-up: general principles.

Make-up will probably have to be limited to demonstrations by the teacher, but if expenses will permit, the pupils should try their hand at it.

The teacher should use characters from life or from the plays studied, and show that physiognomy is usually a result of character.

See that the pupils have a good understanding of straight make-up, and if time and equipment permit, proceed to character make-up.

REFERENCE:

"Time to Make-up," by Wharf.

2. Costume:

(1) Line and colour in costume.

(2) Story of development of costume.

(3) If one of the plays studied is a costume play, the pupils may design the costumes. In some schools it may be possible for the pupils even to make them.

REFERENCE:

"Stage Costuming," by Agnes B. Young (Macmillan Co.).

VIII.—Lighting.

1. Purpose of lighting.

2. Emphasize effects rather than equipment; demonstrations rather than construction. However, as in other sections of the work, if time and expense and situation allow, pupils may try construction of lighting equipment.

3. Plan the lighting for one or two plays.

REFERENCE:

"Modern Theatre Practice," Heffner, Selden, and Sellman.

IX.—Direction.

In the Intermediate Grades only the elements of Direction should be dealt with. No attempt should be made to study the more difficult or more detailed problems of play directing.

Rarely will students at this age be able to do any but the simplest work in Direction; but the few who are, may be encouraged to prepare a director's script,

complete with (a) scenic designs; (b) floor plan; (c) property plot; (d) lighting plot; and (e) stage directions.

The teacher may deal with this section as a separate department of endeavour, or may proceed at once to work on Section X, producing the play for the express purpose of giving training in Direction. This is just a matter of choice between the Discussion and the Project methods. Some teachers may wish to use both.

1. Analysis of the play—type, mood, characterization, tempo.
2. Planning the general action of the play, and as much of the "business" as possible. It is necessary to have the general action planned beforehand, and all action, business, etc., written into the MSS. Much of this may have to be changed when the play goes into rehearsal, but a director must have a plan before he begins on the pupils.
3. Casting: For school-room production the teacher may cast against type, but for public production casting to type is a safer plan.
4. Reading the play aloud. Let no error be established. Some directors have several readings of the play before actual rehearsal begins, but this method is apt to bore young people.
5. In the first few rehearsals pupils should retain their MSS. In fact, they should read the lines until they know the general routine movement and quite a bit of the business.
6. Memorizing lines. This should begin as soon as the pupils know the movement. Insist upon exactness at first; it is quite as easy to memorize the exact words as others substituted by the pupil. As the play progresses, some pupils will slip in the odd error. If it fits in all right, let it go. They must always have the cues right.
7. Rehearsal for continuity. When the cast know their stage movement and most of the business, and the lines pretty well, let them go through the play from first to last, with no directing whatever. Both cast and director will get a good idea of just where polish is needed most, and where the time should be quickened or slowed, etc.
8. Rehearsals for polish. Towards the end, bring in someone to be a sort of advance audience. This guest will have the effect of putting "pep" into the cast.

REFERENCES:

- "The Art of Play Production," by John Dolman, jr.
"The Stage and the School," by Ommanney.

X.—Producing a Play—a class enterprise:

(Use every member of the class in some capacity.)

1. The class with the teacher's advice will choose a play.
2. The class will, also with the teacher's advice, choose committees to look after—
 - costuming,
 - make-up,
 - lighting,

managing the stage,
prompting,
directing the casting, and
acting.

The pupils will do all the work themselves, the teacher supervising as little as possible.

They may have outside rehearsals.

Suggestion:

In Edmonton and Calgary and other large centres, the schools could be encouraged to put on a different play each, and a school festival, *not competitive*, could be held in a central hall.

GENERAL LIST OF REFERENCE BOOKS

NOTE.—*The first two books on the following list will furnish the teacher with sufficient reference material to cover the essentials of the course. If the resources of the school permit, a larger reference library is recommended. The books of particular merit are marked with an asterisk (*)*.

*"Modern Theatre Practice," Heffner, Selden and Sellman—Crofts Publishing Co.

*"The Stage and the School," Katherine Anne Ommanney—Harper and Brothers. New York.

*"The Player's Handbook," Selden—Crofts Publishing Co.

*"Stage Management," Peter Bax—Lovat Dickson, London.

*"The Art of Play Production"; John Dolman, jr.—Harper and Brothers, New York. (An especially good book for general reference, and inspiration.)

"Amateur Acting and Play Production"; Wayne Campbell—Macmillan Co.

"Technique in Dramatic Art"; H. Bosworth—Macmillan Co.

*"Drama and Dramatics"; Helen Randle Fish—Macmillan Co.

"Playmaking and Plays"; Merrill and Fleming—Macmillan Co.

"The Stage is Set"; Lee Simonson—Harcourt, Brace and Co.

(For advanced work and inspiration.)

*"Voice and Speech Problems"; Raubcheck-Davis-Carll—Prentice-Hall Inc., New York.

"First Principles of Speech Training"; Avery-Dorsey-Suckels—Appleton & Co.

*"Stage Costuming"; Agnes B. Young—Macmillan Co.

"Historic Costume"; Lester.

"Scenery Simplified"; Webster & Wetzel—Elridge Entertainment House, Inc.

*"The Art of Pantomime"; Aubert—Henry Holt & Co.

*"Time to Make-up"; Wharf—Walter Baker Co.

List of Plays Recommended for the Intermediate Grades.

NOTE.—*The recommending of this list does not preclude the choice of other plays.*

From the following list as a basis, it is hoped to compile an anthology of plays for Intermediate Schools. Teachers are urged to study and produce as many of these as possible, and to submit their criticisms and suggestions regarding them, or to name other plays that they think should be included in such an anthology.

In this manner, with the co-operation of all Dramatics teachers, it is believed that an excellent anthology, well-suited to Alberta needs, may be compiled after this school-term.

The Child in Flanders—Cicely Hamilton. Nativity Play. Six simple interiors and exteriors. Costume. A good problem in production. Any number of boys and girls. "One Act Plays of To-day," volume 2.

The Royal Touch—Elsie Park Gowan. Social drama. Exterior. Modern European costumes. 3 boys, 2 girls. May be obtained on application to the author, care of the University of Alberta.

Figureheads—A romance. Interior. Oriental costumes. 3 boys, 2 girls. "Magic Lanterns."

Overtones—Alice Gerstenberg. Social comedy. Interior. Modern American. No boys, 4 girls. "Ten One-Act Plays," by Alice Gerstenberg.

Followers—Comedy of manners. Interior. English costume of 1850. 1 boy, 3 girls. "One-Act Plays of Today," Vol. 1; and "Junior Play Book," edited by H. L. Cohen.

Six Who Pass While the Lentils Boil—Stuart Walker. Fantasy. Interior. Costume. 11 or more of either boys or girls. "Representative One-Act Plays by American Authors."

Sir David Wears a Crown—Stuart Walker. Fantasy. Sequel to "Six Who Pass While the Lentils Boil". Exterior. Costume. 18 or more of either boys or girls. "Twenty Contemporary One-Act Plays," edited by Frank Shay.

As the Tumbrils Pass—Van der Veer and Bigelow. Drama. Interior. French Revolution costumes. No boys, 7 to 14 girls. "One-Act Plays for Stage and Study," 7th Series.

Grandma Old-Style—Eaton. Comedy. Interior. Modern. 2 boys, 4 girls. "One-Act Plays for Stage and Study," 7th Series.

The Good and Obedient Young Man—Betty Barr. Quaint, stylized comedy after the Japanese manner. Unit setting for several interiors and exteriors. An excellent problem in acting, directing and setting. 6 or more boys, 2 or more girls, or all girls. "One-Act Plays for Stage and Study," 7th Series.

April Shower—Philip Johnson. Comedy. Interior. English costume of 1812. No boys, 6 girls. "Four New Plays for Women and Girls" (Nelson).

The Romance of the Willow Pattern Plate—Van der Veer. Comic fantasy done in the Chinese manner. Either boys or girls. "Twelve One-Act Plays."

The First Dress Suit—Medcraft. Modern comedy. Interior. 2 boys, 2 girls. "One-Act Plays for Stage and Study," Vol. 6.

A Wedding—Kirkpatrick. Modern farce. Interior. 4 boys, 3 girls. "One-Act Plays for Stage and Study," Vol. 4; and "Short Plays," edited by Knickerbocker.

Two Crooks and a Lady—Pillot. Modern melodrama. Interior. 3 boys, 3 girls. "Plays of the 47 Workshop," and "Short Plays," edited by Knickerbocker.

Two Slatterns and a King—Edna St. Vincent Millay. 2 boys, 2 girls. "Three Plays," by Millay; and "Twenty Contemporary One-Act Plays (American)," edited by Frank Shay.

- The Bride—Gertrude Jennings. Several girls. "Best One-Act Plays of 1931."
- The Princess and the Woodcutter—A. A. Milne. Fairy tale. Either boys or girls. "Eight Modern Plays."
- The Slippers of Cinderella—Graham Robertson. Fairy tale. 1 boy, 8 girls. "Eight Modern Plays," and "Another Treasury of Plays for Children."
- A Star Fantasy—Elizabeth Lewis. Fantasy dealing with the Star of Bethlehem. Costumes. 7 of either boys or girls. In a collection edited by John Bourne and published by Lovat Dickson.
- Pot of Broth—W. B. Yeats. Comedy. Interior. 2 boys, 1 girl. "One-Act Plays of Today," Vol. 3.
- Brothers in Arms—Merrill Dennison. Satirical Canadian comedy. Interior. 3 boys, 1 girl. "Book of Plays," Voaden; "Canadian Plays from Hart House Theatre," Vol. 1; and "Unheroic North," by Dennison.
- The Potboiler—Alice Gerstenberg. Satirical comedy. Modern. Interior. 4 or more boys, 2 or more girls. "Fifty Contemporary One-Act Plays," "Ten One-Act Plays," by Gerstenberg; and "Twelve Plays," edited by Knickerbocker.
- The Grand Cham's Diamond—Comic melodrama. Interior. 3 boys, 2 girls. "One-Act Plays of Today," Vol. 1; "Seven Modern Plays for Younger Players"; and "Let's Do a Play."
- The Monkey's Paw—W. W. Jacobs. Tragedy. Interior. 4 boys, 1 girl. "One-Act Plays of Today," Vol. 2.
- A Night at An Inn—Dunsany. Melodrama. Interior. Costumes. 8 boys, no girls. "One-Act Plays of Today," Vol. 2.
- The Tents of the Arabs—Dunsany. Romance. Exterior. 5 boys, 1 girl. Arabian costume. "Book of Plays," Voaden.
- Poor Maddalena—Saunders. Fantasy. Interior and exterior. Costume. 2 boys, 1 girl. "Twelve Plays," edited by Knickerbocker.
- Three Pills in a Bottle—Rachel Field. "Six Plays by Rachel Field," and "Plays of the 47 Workshop."
- Ali the Cobbler—Sheppard. Comedy. Interior. Costume. 3 boys, 1 girl. "Best One-Act Plays of 1932."
- Poetasters of Ispahan—Bax. 11 boys, 1 girl. "Nine Modern Plays."
- Bargains—Katherine Kester. All girls. "Miniature Plays for Stage and Study," edited by Johnson.
- The Roland Ruby.
- Birthday of the Infanta—Oscar Wilde. "Another Treasury of Plays for Children."
- The Spartan Girl—A. J. Talbot. Farce. Early Greek. Any number of boys or girls.
- The Dyspeptic Ogre—Percival Wilde. Fairy tale. Interior. Any number of boys or girls. "Junior One-Act Plays of Today"; "Atlantic Book of Junior Plays."
- The Knave of Hearts—Louise Saunders. Fairy tale. Interior. Any number of boys or girls. "Junior One-Act Plays of Today"; "Atlantic Book of Junior Plays" and "Drama and Dramatics," by Fish.
- Twentieth Century Lullaby—6 boys, 3 girls.
- The Fatal Quest—Burlesque. Any number of boys or girls.
- The Forks of a Dilemma—Elizabethan comedy. 6 boys, 2 girls.

MUSIC

GENERAL INTRODUCTION—MUSIC IN THE INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL

"Music is the most intimately personal of the fine arts, searching down into the heart of the individual and bringing to expression feelings that are too deep for words. At the same time music is the most social of the fine arts. It is the art we enjoy together."—EDWARD HOWARD GRIGGS.

The course in Music for the Intermediate School has been built as a continuation of the work outlined in the music course in the "Programme of Studies for the Elementary School." Teachers offering this course are strongly advised to familiarize themselves with the music work required by the Elementary School Course.

In this division of the school, pupils are approaching or have entered the period of adolescence. The psychological situations incident to this period of youth, and the various vocal situations arising from changing voices, are problems which demand special attention on the part of the teacher, if the aims of this course are to be fully realized.

DESIRED OUTCOMES OF INSTRUCTION

There is a definite need for Music at the adolescent age—Music as a part of education, not Music apart from it. The main purpose of this course is to have Music function as a part of the active life of the pupil in school and in his present life outside of school. Therefore boys and girls must find joy in Music, both as a personal and as a social interest. "When pupils learn, by experience, that music re-creates the world for them, then we shall have the haven for a musical nation."

It is the function of the school to make *good* music popular by making it familiar. Music selected for these grades should be worth while, and should make a strong emotional appeal to pupils through its beauty of melody, its appealing harmony, and its expressive text. "Music is the language of the finer emotions." "It is emotion captured and crystallized in tone. If we do not teach it so, we do not teach it at all."

Enjoyable musical experiences aid in the development of high ideals, the formation of good taste and artistic discrimination. "What the pupil is able to do here and now is of less importance than what interests or repels him. Attitudes, tendencies, desires are more important than immediate achievement."

Music is typically an art of self-expression; therefore pupils should be enabled to understand the music they hear or perform. "It is infinitely more important vocally, musically, educationally, that the performer feel what he sings and sing what he feels than that he follow some routine of voice production."

While the course does not aim to make professional musicians of the better music students, special interests and aptitudes in pupils should be noted, conserved and encouraged with a view to having these pupils elect freely, in the High School, suitable advanced courses, vocal or instrumental, for which they are especially talented.

It is believed that, by emphasizing music rather than the *performance of it*, pupils will have a keener incentive to acquire skill in performance. While mastery is one source of real pleasure in performance and is the best assurance of a carry-over of this work into life, it is felt that skills and techniques should be developed as an outgrowth of felt needs at this stage, rather than as arbitrary impositions. "Teach the child so that his love for music may grow steadily deeper and wiser and you will not have much trouble in teaching him to read it."

GENERAL SURVEY OF THE COURSE

The course is essentially general and exploratory in character. For general experience in music, three types of activity are recognized: (1) Performance; (2) Listening to Music; (3) Creative Music.

General Music will be required in Grades VII and VIII and will be elective in Grade IX.

This course will include:

- (a) Chorus Practice, including voice culture.
- (b) Sight Singing and Ear-Training (the latter to include creative work in simple melody writing).
- (c) Elementary Theory.
- (d) Listening to Music.

Parts (a) and (b) and (d) constitute the gist of the course and are closely associated.

Part (c) is important, but distinctly subsidiary to parts (a), (b) and (d).

Part (c) is to be based on the songs that are studied and, in a general way, is to be kept within the limits of the work required for those songs.

Part (d) will necessitate some outlay for records. A number of the records listed in the outline for part (d) are those recommended for Music Appreciation in the elementary grades. (See the outline for Music in the "Programme for the Elementary School.") In smaller schools Grades VII, VIII and IX may be combined with lower grades for Music Appreciation. Until equipment has been provided for this work, it will be necessary that the teacher give additional time to parts (a) and (b).

In Grades VII and VIII, where two music periods per week are available, it is suggested that a portion of each period be devoted to part (a), to which part (c) is closely allied, parts (b) and (d) alternating during the remainder of the period. In Grade IX, when four periods are assigned to Music, two periods should be given to part (a), one period to part (d), and one period to parts (b) and (c) alternately. If less time is available in this grade, these numbers will be decreased proportionately.

Additional
Activities

In larger centers where conditions are favourable, the Intermediate School Glee Club is a recommended additional activity for those pupils whose interest and capabilities warrant further musical participation.

Requirements for membership in the Glee Club will be, generally, a good singing voice, the ability to hold a part in a part-song, and fair sight-reading ability. A girls' chorus, a boys' chorus or a mixed chorus are possible types of choral ensembles according to existing conditions. In the girls' chorus suitable

material in two and three parts should be chosen. Good unison songs with effective accompaniments are excellent by way of variety. The selection of fairly easy music, which has charm and which expresses a variety of moods will assure progress and continued interest. In the boys' chorus really satisfying musical results may not be possible due to the shifting of voices from part to part. Although this may result, very often, in an unbalanced group, no voice should be sacrificed for the sake of balance. The material should comprise easy two and three-part songs as well as unison songs, all of which make a definite appeal to boys (words and music). Under capable direction such an organization has excellent possibilities, both socially and artistically.

This activity should never supplant part (a) above, which is intended for *all* pupils, unless, in rare situations, where the numbers of these grades are few and all voices above average.

The School Orchestra or Band is an organization to be encouraged even though the membership be small, because of its social, avocational and vocational possibilities. Many pupils at this age are particularly interested in acquiring skill in instrumental performance, and possible talent should be explored. Where interest is keen, means will be found for securing the necessary equipment to supplement instruments which may be the property of the pupils. This type of musical activity will meet the needs of many pupils who are not particularly gifted vocally.

For further information concerning requirements in instrumental Music the teacher is referred to the outline for Grade IX.

GENERAL MUSIC

(a) Chorus Practice.

The course is required by all pupils in Grades VII and VIII for general training and for exploratory purposes. In this way the less talented as well as the more proficient pupils are afforded an opportunity to enjoy musical experiences beyond the Elementary School level. They may, then, become interested in music not necessarily as an art to be cultivated, but as a recreation to be indulged in. This interest is the greatest assurance that music will carry over into later grades and will function in the home and in community life.

The course consists chiefly of the singing of unison songs, part songs, and Material choruses comprising folk songs, art-songs, songs with descant and modern songs. Rounds and canons may be used also and easy cantatas may be introduced if desired. It is understood that the material chosen will be suitably graded as to difficulty, and will provide for growth in this work from grade to grade. Material should be worth while and should make an appeal to various groups—boys, girls or mixed groups. Correlation with other phases of music work, with other subjects, with Special Day observances, with Special Assembly Program plans, may dictate the choice of material from time to time. Patriotic Songs, Community Songs, which are heard often in social or other gatherings outside of school, should receive attention here as these pupils are beginning to take their place as grown-ups in the social life of the community. The more difficult unison songs should be taught by rote (score in hands of pupils), the simpler ones by the reading process.

Choral Groups

Due to varying vocal situations peculiar to adolescence, definite groupings may be necessary, girls' chorus, boys' chorus, and, where possible, a mixed chorus. Beginning with a two-part chorus in Grade VII, first and second soprano, the introduction of three-part singing may be possible in Grade IX (S.S.A. or S.A.B.), depending upon the condition of the voices in the group. The introduction of four-part singing in Grade IX must be left to the discretion of the instructor. In the majority of schools this work will be better left for the High School. In the case of unchanged voices, no pupil, unless possessing a naturally low voice, should be assigned regularly to an alto part.

The Small Ensemble

A field of choral participation that is very practical, both musically and socially, with pupils of this age, is the Small Ensemble. Duets, trios, quartettes, both vocal and instrumental, have greater possibilities of a carry-over into community and adult life than the larger organization. It meets a social need of adolescent boys and girls in a wholesome and cultural way. The development of true ideals of co-operation and group-feeling is possible through such an activity. Pupils now can be treated as grown-ups and made to assume the responsibility of helping themselves. This is necessary in the Small Ensemble where the success of the individual is the success of the group. The work need not be confined to the few gifted students. This work may pave the way for A Cappella Singing in the High School. The Small Ensemble is a practical answer to the leisure time objective of education.

Voice Culture

The main aim of chorus work is joyous, musical, expressive singing. Boys and girls will more likely sing with feeling, with beauty of tone, with finely discriminating interpretations, if the mind is alive with the meaning of the words. "The secret of a beautiful tone lies in the living imagination." A beautiful tone if correctly produced, is light and easy-flowing, and is accurate in pitch. All forcing and straining must be avoided. All voices should be assigned to the part where they sing easily and comfortably in a limited compass. Proper breathing, intonation, voice blending and diction should receive careful attention. Above all, pupils at this age need understanding and sympathetic encouragement.

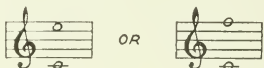
The Adolescent Voice

It is most important that special attention be given the diverging needs of the voices of the pupils in these grades. The characteristics, vocal range and the capabilities of each individual's voice should be determined by the instructor in order that careful treatment of changing voices be given.

The girls' voices change somewhat during the adolescent period. Some can sing as high as ever, others higher. These become sopranos. The soprano voice is usually light and clear and is able to sing lightly and without strain between



Some girls, who cannot sing as high as formerly, and whose low voices do not develop, are classed as second sopranos. They may sing between



Those whose voices become lower in range and richer and fuller in quality become altos. The alto voice may sing between



If the voice cannot sing a full easy tone on the lower A, it should be classed as first alto. There are comparatively few alto voices, especially in the first two years of the Intermediate School.

Doubtful soprano voices on the second soprano part, and doubtful alto voices on the first alto, is a safe classification.

Unchanged boys' voices may be tested in the same way as girls' voices are tested.

The boys' voices change completely during adolescence, becoming different in range and in quality, and should be matched carefully. The change in quality and pitch is discernible in the speaking voice, and, if the voice is "coaxed" downward gradually and naturally during the two or three years it is changing, it will come to no harm and will sound well all the time. As soon as low tones appear, the boy should be shifted to a lower part, alto, then alto-tenor. The changing voice is the boy tenor. This voice is thicker in quality and is more limited in range than the alto voice. He may sing between



The boy baritone or bass is recognized by his deeper speaking voice, the light, boyish quality gradually disappearing. He may sing comfortably between



To test voices, a simple well-known song may be played in different keys until one is found that is suitable. The scale may be used in various keys, pupils singing to "loo" or "lah".

Boys should be encouraged to avoid harsh usage of the voice during mutation, and teachers should never allow a voice to strain for the sake of a well-balanced chorus.

"Good breathing is the very foundation of good singing and good posture is the straightest road to good breathing." If pupils sit or stand "easily erect," they will be more likely to breathe steadily, slowly and deeply. Slow expiration of breath is necessary for steady, smooth, facile tone-production.

General
Directions
Voice
Work

Muscular ease and mental relaxation are essential to proper vocalism. "A cheerful mood means a cheerful tone."

The use of short, simple, rhythmical exercises for *a few minutes* each lesson period will promote good tone-production. Downward vocalizations, sung pianissimo, together with a frequent use of staccato, will aid in the production of a light, elastic tone. The prefixing of a labial consonant to the vowels (oo, oh, ay, ee) for vocal exercises, tends to remove constriction at the larynx, and will help in securing clear, *forward-resonant tone*. The light, loose hum, sung pianissimo, is an effective alternative.

Any improvement in diction will necessitate the purifying of the vowels as these are the sounds upon which the singing voice is sustained. In singing all vowels the mouth cavity must be well opened. (The mouth is opened by dropping the lower jaw.) There must be a slight movement in parts of the tongue. (The tip of the tongue will touch the back of the lower teeth for all vowels.) There must

be a definite, correct shaping of the lips. "No true vowel color can be obtained without lip movement."

Vowels

With long vowels the pushing forward of the lips increase resonance.

"oo," as in "moon" requires the lips well forward, the lower jaw dropped.

"oh," as in "low": lips slightly less forward than for "oo".

"au," as in "call": lips slightly less forward than for "oh," the front teeth clearly seen.

"ah," as in "calm": the mouth wider from side to side (smiling mouth).

"e," as in "me": mouth wide from side to side, little space between teeth, upper and lower teeth seen.

The position of the lips will be the same for the short vowels as for its corresponding long vowel.

"oo," as in "hood": lips less forward than for "oo" (moon), and slightly opened.

"o," as in "not": lips less forward than for "oh". The top teeth are seen slightly.

"a," as in "cat": similar position as for "au" (call), lips slightly less forward.

"u," as in "but": mouth slightly wider than for "o" (not), teeth seen more clearly.

"e," as in "met": mouth wider from side to side than for "ee" (me), vowel placed well forward, mouth well opened.

"i," as in "hit": the upper lips drawn back from "e" position, lower jaw dropped.

Consonants

The correct enunciation of consonants is an essential part of good diction. Pupils should be trained to attack initial consonants quickly and precisely, to dwell on the vowel sound, to sound the final consonant without exaggeration, avoiding the "uh" sound so often heard after the final consonant. Attention should be drawn to the use of the tip of the tongue, the teeth and the lips in the sounding of consonants. Special attention must be given to the consonant "r". If it precedes a vowel (roll), or is combined with another consonant (bring), it should be lightly rolled in the front of the mouth with tongue well forward. The final "r" is silent (mother). The use of "tongue-twisters," as suggested in Oral English, may be employed as an aid in overcoming a careless treatment of consonants.

With the compound vowel sounds (diphthongs), such as "oi", in (toil), (au, ih), the tone is sustained on the first vowel sound, "au", and the second, "ih", is pronounced as quickly as possible.

The work in diction will be an outgrowth of the needs arising from text of songs sung in choral class.

(b) Sight Singing and Ear Training

Provided the minimum requirements laid down in the Elementary School course have been met, the drill work in learning to read simple one-part music will have been done. Pupils in the Intermediate School, then, should be sufficiently well prepared to explore new fields of musical experience in easy two and three-part reading. Where new problems of tune or time are introduced, these should be confined to one-part songs. The work of Division II should be reviewed and extended.

Since the ability to follow the score is a valuable asset to a member of any choral group, pupils who have not gained skill in reading music before entering this division of the school may acquire some facility if interest and motive for learning are strong. The place of music reading here will, of necessity, be incidental to singing, choral, and listening activities. Extra help from the teacher will bring surprisingly quick results with pupils to whom accomplishment seems sufficiently desirable.

Broadly speaking, all music education is ear-training. All musical learning, ^{Ear-Training} from Grade I up, has depended upon hearing. Early attempts at tone-matching, rote-singing, aural analysis of songs to determine their phrasal construction, the use of the so-fa syllables in oral dictation and listening to music, played or sung, have all been directed toward the aural comprehension of music.

In this division of the school, as in Division II, formal work in ear-training has two purposes:

- (1) To assist the ear and the eye in forming associations between music and its notation. This includes both oral and written dictation and is of definite value in connection with music reading. The work of Division II should be continued and extended.
- (2) To cause the mind to take in a larger number of details in the case of music being sung or listened to. This induces a higher grade of appreciation, which is possible with pupils in these grades who have had the musical training provided for in the Elementary School course.

A richer musical experience and a keener appreciation of music is possible if, ^{Creative Activity} to the work in Performance and Listening to Music, the improvising of melodies is added. The success and value of this work will necessitate musical training and a knowledge of notation on the part of the pupils, and a teacher who is capable, musically, of guiding such effort.

"Music is emotion captured and crystallized in tone." A song will be created when a mood has developed due to some personal or classroom situation.

Early attempts at improvising songs are preferably class efforts with the teacher acting as a guide. As each phrase is worked out to the satisfaction of the class (preferably words and music together), it is sung by the class and committed to memory. It may be written on the blackboard. If the best of such work is published in the class paper, or sung in assembly periods, much satisfaction will be experienced and worth-while individual work may result.

The development of ability to hear music mentally is worthy of attention in connection with the work in ear-training. "Aural memory and aural imagination are fundamental necessities in the singing class." They are especially helpful in connection with sight reading and especially part-singing. One method of training a class to hear mentally is suggested: the class sings a well-known song silently while the teacher directs their singing. At a signal from the teacher a small part of the song is sung aloud, and at a second signal the silent singing is resumed. The teacher may indicate more than one part to be sung aloud during the song. Later, individual work may be given to test improvement. ^{Aural Memory}

Two other phases of aural work, "seeing with the ear and hearing with the eye," may be developed to an extent at this time. The following suggestions are offered: Having given the key, encourage pupils to visualize the notation of, at <sup>Aural Vision
Visual Hearing</sup>

least, a part of a well-known tune, played or sung. Individuals may be asked to write the tune on the blackboard. This may be done phrasewise. It may be considered a part of the work in written dictation. On the other hand, pupils may be asked to sing mentally from the printed score and to demonstrate their ability to do so by singing aloud. Easy material should be chosen.

All phases of the above aural work will appeal to pupils if it is done informally and if the spirit of fun is allowed to enter.

(c) Elementary Theory.

The theory to be taught in connection with choral music is for the most part such as is necessary for performing with musical understanding and correctness the selections that are chosen. This work is indicated in the outline for each grade.

(d) Music Appreciation.

Good music, from its peculiar character, makes a three-fold appeal; first, to the ear, as purified, crystallized sound; second, to the intellect, engaging memory, and offering for discernment the relation of parts in a balanced form; and third, to the emotions and states of feeling.

While a certain amount of incidental study of music appreciation may be carried on in conjunction with the choral class, it is necessarily limited in scope, being confined to the particular music or composer under study. A more comprehensive course is necessary, to provide an opportunity for a broad outlook over the field of music in general. In this way the habit of critical listening is cultivated and an intelligent idea of the various media of musical expression, music forms, music history, biography and aesthetics which, in the main, *constitute* the study of Music Appreciation, is gained. It bears the same relation to music education as the subject of Literature and its history bears to the study of English.

The purpose is to acquaint the student with the great literature of music in such a way that he may study it in the light of the times in which it was composed, and note the manner of development of its various forms. The success of the course depends on the presentation of a considerable amount of music, arranged to show the progress of musical art from the earliest times. Pupils are expected to memorize many of the more impressive themes from masterpieces and works bearing the individuality of their composers.

The influence of nationality may be shown, and the evolution of art in different schools of composers: the early church school, the mediaeval secular school, the contrapuntal school, the classical school, the romantic school and the modern school.

The course should include short, pointed lessons on the birth and development of opera and oratorio, the brief biographical studies of the great masters, supported by the performance of excerpts from their more celebrated works.

The development of the symphony orchestra is an important study. The different orchestral "choirs" and the timbre and capabilities of the instruments should be noted and compared.

GENERAL ASSEMBLY PERIOD

The educational possibilities of the weekly or monthly Intermediate School Assembly Period make this activity worthy of attention. In the rural school this

period is possible, but will, of necessity, include the Elementary School, each division of the school making its contribution to the programme.

Although these periods may include, at times, various types of activities—dramatics, debating, public speaking, readings and recitations by the pupils themselves, or lectures, educational movies, and performances by artists outside the school—music by the pupils should play an important part. Purely musical assemblies should be encouraged and planned from time to time.

The purpose of the General Assembly is *not* to replace the regular General Music period, but rather to supplement the work being done here by offering opportunities for all grades to meet socially, each responsible for its contribution toward the worth-while entertainment of all. Too, the prospect of a regular public performance, even though it be only singing before fellow students, is an incentive to good class work in the way of preparation for an artistic performance.

All programmes should be of high order and should be carefully planned and well conducted. Pupils should be given an opportunity to assist teachers in the planning and managing of each entertainment.

These programmes may include:

1. Singing in parts by the whole assembly. This should be considered always the most important part of all assembly programmes. A special seating plan will be required, i.e., by voice parts, also a capable leader and a good accompanist. A variety of material is an essential consideration. The songs will have been learned in the General Music classes in the different grades.
2. Performance by individual grades, by the Intermediate School Special Chorus, or Glee Club, or by the Orchestra (if such organizations exist).
3. Vocal or instrumental solos, duets, trios, etc.
4. Rhythmical work (folk dances).
5. Contributions from the High School or from musical sources outside of school.
6. Listening to music (radio, phonograph).

GENERAL MUSIC, Grades VII, VIII

The teacher is advised to read *carefully* "General Introduction."

Specific Aims.

1. To continue the work of Division II of the Elementary School in the development of free and beautiful singing of songs.
2. To provide pupils with an increasingly wide and enjoyable musical experience through the development of concerted chorus-singing in the direction of mass chorus practice.
3. To develop increased power to sing at sight through the use of simple two and three-part songs.
4. To develop increasing power of the eye and ear in correlation.
5. To pay special attention to the diverging needs of the voices of the pupils.
6. To recognize the birth of new affective (emotional) states in the pupils and so provide for the best possible emotional experience and development.
7. To recognize the social effects of music and to articulate closely the musical activities of the school with those of the home and the community through

the encouragement of independent performance by individuals and by small groups.

8. To develop an intelligent musical taste and judgment and the power to perceive the aesthetic and spiritual significance of music through thoughtfully directed work in "Listening to Music."

(a) Chorus Practice: Procedure.

Group singing will constitute the main part of the work in these grades.

See "*General Introduction*" under this heading.

It is thought advisable to confine the work of Grade VII to the singing of unison and suitably easy two-part songs in order to meet the varying degrees of musical training which pupils entering this division of the school may show.

With the demands of the majority in mind, unison singing will be stressed. For pupils who have had little musical training, unison singing will aid especially in the acquiring of voice-control. The more difficult unison songs should be taught by rote, the simpler ones by the reading process.

If the minimum requirements of Division II have been met, pupils entering this grade will have acquired the ability to read simple, one-part music. Here pupils should experience the joy of producing pleasing harmonies. The teachers introducing two-part work for the first time are referred to the section "Supplementary Work" in the Grade VI outline, Elementary School Course. This work will, of necessity, be closely connected with the work in sight-singing and ear training, as "singing in harmony arouses and directs attention to the benefits that accrue from the ability to read the musical score."

With unchanged voices there should be a frequent interchange of parts. No pupil, unless possessing a naturally low voice, should sing the second part regularly. All pupils should acquire ease in singing a part other than the melody. This assures more reliable performance.

In Grade VIII changing voices may necessitate the introduction of three-part singing (S.S.A. or S.A.B.). In larger centres it may seem advisable to have a boys' chorus and a girls' chorus. In smaller schools the mixed group will be the only possibility. Great care should be exercised in the choice of material. All three-part songs should be simple—hymn-tune degree of difficulty. No voice should be subjected to strain. (See "The Adolescent Voice" under General Introduction.)

For two or three-part chorus singing the following method of presentation is suggested:

Interest in the song may be aroused through the appreciative reading of the text and through the telling of interesting details relating to the composition. The pupils listen to the song played on the piano, following closely the voice-parts on the score. Pupils may hum the parts softly as the song is played a second time. All pupils may sing the low parts (to syllables, if necessary, then to "loo"). Pupils try parts together, to "loo", and phrasewise, if necessary. All should be encouraged to sing easily and to listen to all parts in order to secure balance and a pleasing blend. The text should be read aloud softly by the group before singing, in order to establish the pronunciation, enunciation and phraseology of the words and to stimulate proper reaction to the mood of the piece. (See "General Directions, Voice Work," under General Introduction.)

MATERIAL.

A.—SONG BOOKS.

- Progressive Music Readers, Books III and IV.
 Cantemns, Part I.
 Halcyon Song Book.
 Twice 55 Community Song Book.
 Music Highways and Byways, "The Bronze Book" (Folk Songs and Folk Dances of Many Peoples, and plays based on these)—Gage & Co.
 Foresman Books of Songs, Book III (Folk Songs) (Unison, two-part, three-part songs, well graded for changing voices)—Gage & Co.
 Northland Songs: Murray Gibbon (Unison songs with Canadian Themes)—G. V. Thompson Co., Toronto.
 A Canadian Song Book: Ernest MacMillan (Unison, two-part and three-part songs)—Dent & Sons.
 Junior-Senior High School Chorus Book: Baker and Daniel—Presser & Co.
 The Glenn Glee Club Book for Boys—Ditson & Co.
 Chorus Book for Boys: Probst and Berquist, Book I—Schirmer & Co.
 Arnold Descant Series arranged by Dunhill—Arnold, London.

B.—SONGS.

Unison Songs:

- | | |
|--|-----|
| The Song of the Music Makers—Shaw (Cramer) | 12c |
| Argus—Shaw (Cramer) | 12c |
| Come Unto These Yellow Sands—Purcell (Cramer) | 12c |
| Pioneers—Shaw (Cramer) | 12c |
| Bois Epais—Lully (Novello). | |
| Lass With the Delicate Air—Arney (Bayley, Ferguson). | |
| Jerusalem—Blake-Parry. | |
| Encore Song—Harris (Year Book Press) | 10c |
| Creation's Hymn—Beethoven (Novello). | |
| Ye Spotted Snakes—Collingwood (Lyric Collection) | 12c |
| Who Is Sylvia?—Schubert (Novello) | 7c |

Two-Part Songs:

- | | |
|--|-----|
| A Little Folly—Bach (Lyric Collection) | 12c |
| Many's the Time When the Heart Was Young—Schumann (Lyric Collection) | 12c |
| Good-Night—Brahms (Lyric Collection) | 10c |
| Come Down to Kew—Deis (Schirmer's School Series) | 15c |
| Wanderer's Night Song—Rubinstein (Schirmer's School Series) | 8c |
| I Would That My Love—Mendelssohn (Schirmer's School Series) | 8c |
| Bells of the Sea—Lamb-Solman (Sam Fox Series) | 15c |
| Cornfield Melodies—Gates (Flammer Series) | 15c |
| Pop Goes the Weasel—Schoffer-Kountz (Witmark Series) | 15c |
| A Madrigal of Spring—Fletcher (Novello). | |
| Little Jack Horner—Diack (Lyric Collection) | 15c |

Three-Part Songs (S.S.A.):

- | | |
|---|-----|
| Awake—Pelissier (Leonard, Gould & Boettler Collection) | 15c |
| The Jolly Miller—Traditional (Leonard, Gold & Boettler Collection) .. | 10c |

Where'er You Walk—Handel (Lyric Collection)	12c
By the Waters of Minnetonka—Lieurance (Presser & Co.)	12c
Gleam, Gleam, O Silver Stream—P. de Faye (Beacon Series)— Silver Burdett	12c
Amaryllis (arranged by Ambrose)—(Schmidt Collection)	10c
The Little Dustman—Brahms (Schirmer's)	12c
The Cuckoo Clock—Grant-Schaefer (Clayton Summy Co.)	8c
Come to the Fair—Wheeler (Boosey & Co.)	15c

Three-Part Songs (S.A.B.):

John Peel (Hunting Song)—Wynn	12c
Comrades of the Road—Nelson (Willis School Songs)	10c
Dear Land of Home—Sibelius (Frank Edition)	15c
Night Shadows Falling—Lemare (Frank Edition)	10c
All Through the Night—Welsh (Wynn)	10c
Old Folks at Home—Foster.	
I Am the King of the Outlaws—(Willis School Songs)	10c

A list of firms who are specialists in School Music materials, and lists of Teachers' Reference Books are given in the Outline for Grade IX.

(b) Sight Singing and Ear Training.

The work in sight-singing will be a necessary part of the work in chorus singing. Since the new problem in these grades is the reading of part-songs, the material will, of necessity, be simple from the standpoint of tune and time. No problems other than those suggested to be included in the work of Division II of the Elementary School should be introduced. (The teacher is referred to the Elementary School Course.) Various problems of tune and time will receive attention as the needs arise. Singing at sight, without the use of syllables, should be encouraged.

For recommended books dealing specifically with this phase of the work, see Grade IX outline, under this heading:

For the various types of work under ear training, the teacher is referred to "General Introduction."

(c) Elementary Theory.

While the acquisition of theoretical musical knowledge is not an objective of the course, nevertheless it should be an outcome of the musical activities of the pupil, since music theory touches every aspect of the work—song-singing, music-reading, music-writing, music-listening, etc. Through the richer musical experience provided in these grades the fundamental facts of music theory, covered in an incidental way in the Elementary School, should become permanent factors of the pupil's musical mentality. New theoretical facts should be dealt with as they arise.

Grade VII: A better understanding of the signs of staff notation and expression met with in the Elementary School programme: staff; treble clef; leger lines; notes; rests; dots; bar; double bar; accent; repeat signs; tie; slur; pitch names of lines and spaces; syllable names (diatonic, chromatic); accidentals; time-signatures; various simple measure-patterns met with; the signatures of the nine common keys; the formation of the major scales with sharps and the major scales with flats; common words of expression—dynamics (p, pp, mp,

f, ff, mf, cres., dim.), tempo (largo, lento, andante, rit., a tempo, moderato, allegro, allegretto), mood and style (maestoso, marcato, dolce, cantabile, con spirito, con grazia).

Grade VIII: Review of the work of Grade VII. Introduce the F clef, if needed. The nine common keys written in notation in both G and F clef. While the study of minor scales is not advised in this grade, a feeling for the tonality of the minor mode should be one of the outcomes of the singing of songs in minor keys. Pupils should come to accept the minor mode as a natural form of expression and to be sensitive to those elements in the minor scale that distinguish it from the major.

Pupils in this grade should be encouraged to sing at sight, without syllables, hence they should learn to recognize intervals as they appear on the staff (an eye study)—seconds, thirds, fourths, etc.

Additional marks of expression as they arise in songs studied.

Recommended Teachers' Reference Books are listed in the Outline for Grade IX under "Music Theory."

(d) Listening to Music.

Pupils entering this division of the school will have learned much incidentally from the "singing" through the grades, and from previous training in definite music appreciation. The chief aim in the Intermediate School is "the development of joy in music, as something fine and beautiful, which will enrich their lives."

Music appreciation must really come "from within." The pupils in these grades must continue to be made familiar with good and beautiful music—both vocal and instrumental. Their "listening" ability must be developed. They should learn to know and to recognize, at least, ten great compositions each year—to name the composer, and to know the story of his life. By this means "composers become friends of children, and their works cherished possessions."

The music appreciation course of the earlier grades, particularly of Division I, should be reviewed and the "attainments" of the class brought up to the standard suggested.

Through the use of large coloured charts of instruments, and recordings of instrumental selections, it has been made possible to recognize the appearance and voice of certain of the instruments of the orchestra. This training may now be completed. In Division II the following instruments should have been heard and seen: flute, clarinet, violin, 'cello, double bass, oboe, trumpet, cornet, French horn, trombone, tuba, kettle drums, bass drum, snare or side drums, tambourine. To these may be added: piccolo, English horn, bassoon, contra bassoon, bass clarinet, celesta, cymbals, gong, triangle, castanets, tom-tom, chimes, bells, xylophone, harp, piano, harpsichord.

Proceed to consider instruments in combination (Record 20161, oboe and piano, etc.). Review thoroughly the four "families" of instruments in a large symphony orchestra. (See Music Appreciation for Grade IV Programme of Studies for the Elementary School, bottom of page 245.)

Use recordings that have become familiar in preceding grades to discover new beauties—new interests. Should any pupil be able to play reasonably well on some instrument, let there be "individual" performance as well as performance

from records. The desired outcome of such lessons is to encourage pupils to study some instrument.

The "Educational Catalogue of Victor Records for Home, School and College" will be given free at any music dealers, and is recommended for reference.

The following records are recommended for Grade VII:

20522—Individual tones of instruments.

Part I—Strings.

Part II—Wood-wind.

20523—Instruments.

Part III—Brass.

Part IV—Percussion.

20079—No. 1, Melodies for children.

No. 2, Melodies for children.

20164—No. 3, Melodies for children.

No. 4, Melodies for children.

(These are well known tunes, each played by a characteristically suitable instrument.)

20319-20—"William Tell" Overture—Rossini.

20245 A—Anitra's Dance—Grieg.

B—In the Hall of the Mountain King—Grieg.

Grade VIII—Instrumental

19926—Instruments combined in groups of three.

20150—Instruments combined in different groups.

20161—Instruments combined—string and wood-wind.

20801—Instruments combined in operatic airs.

1193—Harpichord.

19923—Review Vermeland—string quartette.

216501—Review (In a Monastery Garden and Minuett).

6505—Review (Dance Macabre).

9016—Pomp and Circumstance—Elgar.

1296—Hungarian Dance—Brahms.

"The Symphony Orchestra and its Instruments" is an invaluable book. It may be purchased in an album container from any dealer in the Victor product.

Questions:

Name the four sections of the orchestra and name the instruments belonging to each.

Name the instruments belonging to the string section.

Etc., etc.

The harp is always listed in the "string section" because it has strings, although it is not played with a bow. 20522 gives an example of the harp.

Use all recordings suggested, again and again. "Music that is known and remembered until it can be whistled or sung, or can be reviewed silently in the mind, becomes loved, and is heard with appreciation. So, play the phonograph before school, after school, at intermission, whenever the pupils will hear—as well as in the formal music period." This advice is given by Walter Damrosch to school teachers preparing the children for his wonderful concert broadcasts to the schools in 1936-37 season.

Impressing "Mood" by "Mode" (Major-Minor): Review the suggestions given for this on page 253, Programme of Studies for Elementary School. Draw attention to changes of "mode" (major-minor) in the listening lessons. The records previously used may be used again for this purpose—6639; 20443; 1242; 20130; 20245; 20347.

Songs.

In Grades VII and VIII the Folk Song and the Art Song should be studied. The story of the beginnings of Opera and Oratorio should be told.

(A) *The Folk Song*: "Songs of the People," handed down from generation to generation through the singing of mothers to their children. The characteristics of the people revealed in the very "texture"—wild, plaintive, gay, etc., according to the nature of the land from where it came.

Study background—the land, the people, their occupations and activities, as revealed in these songs.

"What is the song about?"

"What is its mood or spirit?"

(See Mrs. Fryberger's "Listening Lessons in Music Appreciation," pages 33 and 34, for an excellent specimen lesson on the song, "Old Folks at Home.")

Develop the creative interpretive ability of children—they themselves determining the way in which songs may be sung.

Apply "song-analysis" (see Division I, page 234) and trace the "growth" of the song in question.

(B) *The Art Song*: A song in which the accompaniment is an equally important part, enriching by varied harmonies, embellishing with florid passages, at times, adding a kind of running commentary on the text. The Art Song is of two kinds:

1. "Strophic," when the same tune is repeated for each stanza.
2. "Through Composed," when the music is changed to suit the mood and sentiment of the poem.

Use Folk Songs and Art Songs in correlation with (a) nature and seasons; (b) Social Studies; (c) social programmes; (d) Art,—associate music with pictures; ask students to illustrate their songs; (e) Literature; (f) Physical Education in rural school—through rhythmic play, and Rhythm Band in earlier grades. See also "Folk Dance" recordings on pages 7 and 10—Victor Educational Catalogue.

Give brief comments on the composer, the period and any special points to be noted in song construction. A picture of the composer of the instruments used and of the story setting will greatly help in adding interest. Use the time mostly for actual singing or listening to good recordings of these songs.

Use the phonograph too, to teach some of them.

The boys, particularly, will enjoy singing "Rolling Down to Rio," 120825; and the girls, "Billy Boy," 120825.

These Sea Chanteys and other songs should be used to integrate with the Social Studies or with Literature. Songs with band accompaniments will provide an occasional thrill for the boys and girls.

GRADE VII.

Folk Songs:

- 4023 Barbara Allen (English).
- 20152 Duke of Marlborough (French).
- 4083 Sally in our Alley, John Peel, etc., etc. (English).
- 263551 Allouette (French-Canadian).

Art Songs

- 40219 The Little Sandman—Brahms.
- 4085 I Know a Bank (correlate with dramatics) (duet for sopranos).
- 120822 Hark, Hark the Lark, Who is Sylvia?—Schubert.

Songs with Band Accompaniment:

- 216511 O, Canada. National Anthem, etc., with chorus of 2,200 voices and band accompaniment.

GRADE VIII.

Folk Songs:

- 6822 Song of the Volga Boatmen (Russian).
- 1338 La Paloma (Spanish).
- 263559 Sur Le Joli Vent (French-Canadian).
- 24244 Negro Spirituals.

Art Songs:

- 6924 Lo, There the Gentle Lark—Bishop.
- 6563 The Two Grenadiers—Schumann.
- 1361 Knowest Thou That Dear Land—Thomas.
My Heart Ever Faithful—Bach.
Where'er You Walk—Handel.
- 216511 Songs with Band Accompaniment, 2,200 voices (Mixed Choir).
It will provide an occasional thrill for girls and boys to sing *with* this record.

GRADE VIII.

Compare voices. Artist voices contrasted—their range and quality noted. Ask for the names of contemporary vocalists. Have records, if possible, for these. Study types of songs for different voices and for voices in combination.

Two-Part Songs:

- 24221.

Three-Part Songs:

- 24242.

Opera.

Opera consists of Drama, or acting, sung with orchestral accompaniment, and produced with suitable costume and scenery, the scenery depicting the locality and the setting, the costumes depicting the times. Opera originated about the year 1600, through the efforts of a small group of men—two of whom were musicians—to revive Greek drama.

"Daphne," the first attempt, was so successful that "Euridice," the first real opera, was composed to celebrate the wedding of Henry IV to Maria de Medici.

The early Italian operas attached most importance to vocal technique, with little attention to story, and still less to orchestration.

The operas by the great German composer, Wagner (1813-1883), show that equal importance was given to text, drama, and music. A three-fold perfection was the ideal.

An instrumental prelude, or Overture (which foreshadows events to come), choral numbers, solos, duets, trios, quartets, sometimes a sextette (as in "Lucia"), carry the story forward, often in a Recitative, an Aria (song), or a Chant.

Simple types of opera, such as "Martha," should be used at first. Pupils should be encouraged to read the story books about opera which ought to find a place in every school library.

Pupils should also be encouraged to attend performances of opera or oratorio when such are given, the teacher preparing them by commenting on the work and the composer, and, either by playing or by record, familiarizing them with the main themes.

OPERAS.

Grade VII:

- { 22175 Selections from
- { 22176 Hansel and Gretel (Humperdinck).
- 35849 Hiawatha's Childhood.
- 8452 Even Bravest Hearts (Faust).
- 19783 The Soldiers' Chorus (Faust).
- 20127 Anvil Chorus (Il Trovatore).
- 6123
- or
- 1188 Last Rose of Summer (Martha).

Grade VIII:

The story of "Lohengrin"—the Swan Knight might be used. Refer to the story of King Arthur and His Knights of the Round Table; also to Tennyson's "Sir Galahad".

- 9005 The Bridal Chorus (Lohengrin).
- (Pupils sometimes could join in singing this well known chorus.)
- 8042 Miserere (Il Trovatore).
- 10012 Sextette (Lucia), also Quartette from Rigoletto.
- 7383 Cara Nome (Rigoletto).
- 35940 Gems from Aïda.
- 1747 Barcarolle (Tales of Hoffman).
- One Fine Day (Madame Butterfly).
- 35433 Gems from Traviata.

(B) *Oratorio*: Drama set to music with orchestral accompaniment. It is produced without costumes, scenery or acting. (Mendelssohn's "Elijah" has had occasional performances with acting, scenery and costuming).

In December, 1936, Elgar's oratorio, "The Kingdom," was produced for the first time with dramatic version in London, England. This is rather "reverting to type" because at first, oratorio, like opera, was produced in that way.

Oratorio originated in the oratory of the church in Rome (hence its name). It is usually founded on a scriptural theme, and is always sacred in character.

The year 1600 was an eventful one for the history of music. Both opera and oratorio were born in that year. The "concert form" of oratorio was perfected in England by George F. Handel, a German who adopted England as his home, and became a naturalized subject. His best known oratorio is "The Messiah," composed in 1741 (in a little less than two weeks). Other well-known and well-loved oratorios by Handel are "Judas Maccabaeus" and "Samson". These are still sung today, almost two hundred years after they were composed.

ORATORIOS.

Grade VII:

- 6555 "He Shall Feed His Flock" (The Messiah).
- C2489 Hallelujah Chorus (The Messiah).
- 120320 I Know That My Redeemer Liveth (The Messiah).

Grade VIII:

- 20620 How Lovely Are the Messengers (St. Paul).
Life Thine Eyes (Elijah).
- 9424-29 The Crucifixion (The Messiah).
- 9019 All We Like Sheep (The Messiah).
- 9019 And With His Stripes (The Messiah).
Angels Ever Bright and Fair (Theodora).
With Verdure Clad (Creation).

Other beautiful sacred solos:

- 35856 Hear My Prayer—Mendelssohn.
- 22993 My Heart Ever Faithful—Bach.
Jesu, Joy of Man's Desiring—Bach.
- 120817 Hear Ye Israel (Elijah).

In the thirty-fifth year book of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part II, the following findings are given: "Listening to Music is a real art, a human skill, demanding both training and practice. . . . Listening now considered as definite a musical activity as performing or composing. . . . Because the trained ear is a pre-requisite of every musical experience. . . . All progressive schools and colleges are now offering "listening lessons," courses in Music Literature, and Music Appreciation lessons. . . . We do not deny that in the past a few musical listeners have been born and not made, and that many more have made themselves. We simply ask 'What about the music lovers that might have been?' Our grandparents needed not listening lessons, it is true, neither did they need any electric light bulbs or automobile tires. . . . It would be stupid to let our children get years behind in their enjoyment of music or run the risk of their missing it entirely, just for lack of a little timely training."

The following sensible, thoughtful words by Miss Lillian Baldwin, Music Supervisor, Cleveland Schools, Ohio, are worthy of attention.

"A few marching orders to teachers in her classes may be given:

- (1) Know your music.
- (2) Know your child, fit your selection to your listener.

- (3) Never lay down the law. In matters of taste there is no law. Forget the teacher-pupil relationship, and be the child's companion on a splendid venture."

It is earnestly urged that books about music be added to the school library, and pupils be encouraged to read these books. See Bibliography, Elementary School Course, Division II.

A list of Teachers' Reference Books relating to this phase of the work is given in the outline for Grade IX. The teacher should see that one or two of these reference books are placed in the school library.

It is suggested that in schools where little equipment can be provided for Music Appreciation, the teacher use the "Music Appreciation Album for Upper Grades" put out by the Victor Phonograph Co. This album contains seven double records, a book of instructions and cards illustrating different musical instruments. The approximate price is \$7.50.

MINIMUM ATTAINMENTS FOR GRADES VII AND VIII.

1. The ability by the end of Grade VIII to sing well and with enjoyment a repertory of, at least, twenty-five unison and part songs.
2. Ability on the part of the pupil to use his voice intelligently within its limited scope.
3. Ability to sing, at sight, using words, a unison song of hymn-tune grade or, using syllables, part-songs of hymn-tune degree of difficulty.
4. Ability of, at least, thirty per cent of pupils to sing, individually, at sight, music sung by the class as a whole.
5. Knowledge of the essential facts of elementary theory sufficient to enable seventy-five per cent of the pupils to give a correct explanation of any notational features contained in the songs of average difficulty recommended for these grades.
6. Ability to appreciate the charm of design in songs sung and to give an account of the salient features of structure in a standard composition after a few hearings of it.
7. Ability to recognize, to name and to give the composer's name of, at least, twenty standard compositions which have become familiar through repeated hearings.
8. A growing desire on the part of pupils to participate in, and to listen to worth-while music.

GRADE IX

NOTE.—*Teachers who offer this course are requested to read carefully the outline of the course in Music in the new "Programme for the Elementary School." The methods there presented, and the approach to music theory and music appreciation there suggested, cannot fail to be helpful to all teachers of school music.*

Aims of the Course.

For general aims teacher is referred to General Introduction to Music in the Intermediate School.

The specific aims of the course are to increase the pupils' pleasure in song-singing; to preserve and develop their voices during the period of change; to

develop their harmonic sense through part-singing; to strengthen their ability to read music; and to provide suitable material and conditions for listening to music of a type that is beyond their power to reproduce.

The chief aim of the course is to enable pupils to find enjoyment in music, both in school and in after life. The course does not aim to produce professional musicians.

Minimum Requirements.

The course in Music comprises the following parts, *either* of which parts is accepted as a full music option:

I.—General Music—

- (a) Chorus Practice, including Voice Culture (2 periods).
- (b) Ear Training and Sight-Singing (1 period).
- (c) Elementary Theory ($\frac{1}{2}$ period).
- (d) Music Appreciation ($\frac{1}{2}$ period).

II.—Instrumental Music—

In this, clearance in the Music option may be obtained in *either* of the following two fields:

1. Extra-mural music study in piano, violin, violoncello, voice, organ.
The accompanying schedule shows the standing required.
2. Membership in a school orchestra or band meeting the requirements as shown below.

In school programmes where four periods are assigned to Choral Music, two periods should be given to Part (a), one period to Part (b), and one period to Parts (c) and (d) alternately. (These parts are shown above in parentheses.) If less time is available for Music, these numbers will be decreased proportionately.

Parts (a) and (b) and (d) constitute the gist of the course and are to be closely associated.

The requirement in Choral Music is that pupils master two or three unison songs a month, or one or two part-songs a month. *The year's work should include fifteen unison songs and ten part-songs.*

Part (c) is important, but distinctly subsidiary to Parts (a), (b) and (d).

Part (c) is to be based on the songs that are studied, and in a general way kept within the limits of the work required for those songs.

Part (d) will necessitate some outlay for records. A number of the records listed in the outline for Part (d) are recommended also for Music Appreciation in the elementary grades. (See the outline for Music in the "Programme for the Elementary School".) In the smaller schools, Grade IX may be combined with lower grades for Music Appreciation. If no equipment has been provided for Part (d), it will be necessary that the teacher give additional time to Parts (a) and (b).

Part 2 of the Instrumental Music is the concern of schools where there is a school orchestra or a school band. Those selecting Part 1 of the Instrumental Music option will also be required to take Part (d) of the General Music Course. Those selecting Part 2 of the Instrumental Music option will also be required to take Parts (c) and (d) of the General Music Course.

In schools where there is a school orchestra or a school band, pupils who perform regularly on one musical instrument or more may be granted Grade IX standing in Music, provided the following requirements have been met:

(1) The orchestra or band must be under the direction or supervision of the school.

(2) The members must meet regularly for practice under a competent conductor, and the practice sessions must occupy at least two hours a week throughout the school year.

(3) It must master a repertory of at least ten selections during the year, these to be of medium difficulty, of good quality, and of different types.

The types contained in the following folios or books will be regarded as satisfactory:

FOR ORCHESTRAS

Progressive Orchestra Edition, Grade I—Carl Fischer, 46 Cooper Square, New York.

Temple Orchestra Collection—J. W. Pepper and Son, 33rd and Walnut Streets, Philadelphia.

Champion Orchestra Collection—J. W. Pepper and Son.

FOR BANDS

Beginner's Band Book—J. W. Jenkins and Sons, Kansas City, Mo.

Educator Band Books—C. L. Barnhouse, Conservatory Building, Oskaloosa, Ia.

U. T. D. Band Books—John Church Co., Cincinnati, Ohio.

An activity that may be introduced *to alternate with* the Chorus Practice period is the "School Pipe Band." The making and the decorating of the pipes is essentially an Art problem, and this work should be done during the Art period. The tuning and playing of the pipes is a musical activity which may be introduced to alternate with the chorus practice.

FOR "SCHOOL PIPE BANDS".

Pipe bands are a comparatively new activity in Canada. The Board of Education (England) in Pamphlet No. 95 states the following: "It is a delightful form of practical musical education. Class work is made exceedingly interesting, and can be quite easily co-ordinated with the normal musical work of the school."

The advantages to be derived from the making and playing of musical pipes are many:

1. The charm of adventure—the adventure of creating something with a beautiful tone.
2. Valuable ear-training unconsciously and delightfully obtained through the critical *tuning* of the pipe, step by step, and building up its scale.
3. Music-reading improved as the pipe-playing is preceded with from the printed tunes.
4. Inventiveness developed through playing tunes "by ear," and through creating new tunes, which can charm through their
 - (a) balance of phrase,
 - (b) melodic freshness.

5. As an accompaniment to folk dancing and folk singing, spontaneity can be furthered and music oftener take its rightful place as an expression of joy and happiness.
6. This project offers an interesting correlation with the Art course, the making and decorating of the pipes being essentially an Art problem.

Pipe playing must commend itself to all who consider its possibilities as an incentive to Music Appreciation. The work also proceeds hand in hand with choral singing and ear-training.

The beauty of the *tone* of the pipes must result in appreciation of true tone-beauty: the raucous tones of some instruments sound repellent after the "fairy-like" pure tones of the pipes. The type of music played on the pipes will be a training in true music-evaluation.

As no great aptitude or previous knowledge is necessary to begin its study, *anyone* may feel encouraged to attempt to make and play successfully these lovely elf-like-toned instruments.

The probable and desired outcome will be to play a wind instrument in an orchestra.

Supplies of pipes, and of books for pipe music, may be had at the School Book Branch, Department of Education, Edmonton, Alberta.

SUGGESTED REFERENCE BOOKS:

Making Musical Pipes (J. Halliday)	60c
or	
The Piper's Guild Handbook (Margaret James), J. B. Cramer	75c
How to Make Bamboo Pipes (Margaret James) (a chart 30"×15" to pin on the workroom wall)	10c
Piper's Tunes (arranged by Margaret James)	75c
Folk Dance Tune (arranged by Margaret James)	45c
Duets and Trios (arranged by Edgar H. Hunt)	45c
Elizabethan Ayres, arranged as trios (Edgar H. Hunt)	65c

PRIVATE INSTRUCTION IN MUSIC

While school music includes class singing and membership in a band or orchestra, the Music option is intended to include, in addition, voice training and instruction on the violin, piano or organ, as carried on by private teachers and tested by regular examining boards. This means that any student carrying on the study of music privately may present the proper certificate in any of the branches of music mentioned above as one of the three options required by the Grade IX Programme. Teachers of Grade IX classes are urged to give this information to their students, that the work of the year may be lightened to the extent of one option in all cases where the candidate expects to be able to present the music certificate. Since four periods are normally given to Music, it is expected that these will be available as study periods for pupils carrying this subject by private tuition.

Certificates for Standing in Grade IX Music.

Certificates of the following Examining Boards, issued for the grade specified in each case, will be accepted by the Department of Education as the equivalent of full Grade IX standing in Music:

EXAMINING BOARDS	INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL GRADE IX	
	Practical	Theory
University of Toronto Toronto Conservatory	Grade VI	Grade I
Western Board of Music	Grade V	Grade III
McGill University McGill Conservatorium	Junior Grade	Elementary Grade
Associated Board of Royal Schools	Grade IV	Grammar of Music, Grade II

OUTLINE OF THE COURSE

Note.—In many rural schools it will be impossible to carry out the complete scheme as outlined, but in no case is it impossible to offer the less specialized parts of the outline.

I.—CHORUS PRACTICE

Song-singing.

Song-singing should include the study and performance of unison songs, part songs, and choruses, comprising folk-songs, classical songs, songs with descant, and modern songs. Rounds and canons should also be used; and easy cantatas may be introduced, if desired. The introduction of three and four-part singing (S.A.B. and S.A.T.B.) in this grade will naturally depend upon the condition of the boys' voices and the pupils' sight-reading ability, and must be left to the discretion of the instructor. It should not be stressed unduly. In the case of unchanged voices, no pupil, unless possessing a naturally low voice, should be regularly assigned to an alto part. Unison singing must receive attention.

RECOMMENDED SONG BOOKS

"Progressive Music Readers," Books III and IV.

"Cantemus," Part I.

"Halcyon Song Book."

"Music for Many Lands and Peoples." (Price, \$1.52.)

"Twice Fifty-Five."

NOTE.—Any of the books listed in this outline may be ordered from the School Book Branch, Department of Education.

It is recommended that the "Progressive Music Readers," Book III, and "Cantemus" be used in schools where the instruction in Music has not previously been continuous, or productive of satisfactory attainment. Where the previous instruction has been sound and effective, the "Progressive Music Readers," Book IV, and "Cantemus" may be used, or the "Halcyon Song Book" and "Cantemus." "Twice Fifty-Five" is recommended as a good collection of well-known songs for community singing.

Every school should acquire a repertoire of modern unison songs and part songs, also of duets and trios. *A comprehensive list of such musical selections, including also cantatas and operettas, may be obtained if desired from the Department of Education.*

The following firms are specialists in school music and will supply on application graded lists suitable for all requirements:

Arnold, 41 Maddox Street, London, W.I.

Bayley & Ferguson, 54 Queen Street Glasgow.

Cramer & Co., 139 New Bond Street, London, W.I.

Curwen & Sons, 24 Berners Street, London, W.I.

Deane & Sons, Year Book Press, 32 Museum St., London, W.C.I.

Novello & Co., 160 Wardour Street, London, W.I. (H. W. Gray Co., 159 East 48th Street, New York, agents).

Oxford University Press; Canadian Agents: Anglo-Canadian Music Co., 144 Victoria Street, Toronto.

Theodore Presser Co., 1712 Chestnut St., Philadelphia.

Educational Music Bureau Inc., 434 S. Wabash Ave., Chicago.

Lyon and Healy, Wabash Ave., Chicago.

C. C. Birchard & Co., 221 Columbus Ave., Boston.

W. J. Gage & Co., Ltd., Toronto, Ont.

J. M. Dent & Sons, Ltd., Toronto, Ont.

Voice Culture.

The teacher is advised to read "General Introduction" to "Music in the Intermediate School" under this heading.

The aim is to develop a correctly produced, light and easy-flowing tone, with accuracy of pitch. All forcing and straining of the voice must be avoided, special care being given to boys whose voices show signs of changing or "breaking." All voices, in fact, need to be under observation at all times. Diction must receive careful attention. In addition to vocalizing phrases from the songs being studied, other suitable voice exercises may be used.

Note.—Some of the pupils who have had no previous training in music, particularly vocal music, will not be able to derive much benefit from this course. *At the beginning of the school year, the teacher should give such pupils a simple voice and sight-singing test, and advise them in accordance with the results.*

The following book is recommended to teachers for exercises in *voice production*: "The School of Sight Singing"; Concone—Schirmer's Library, Vol. 245. (Price, \$1.25.)

Teachers will also find much useful material relating to *voice culture* in the following three books:

"School Choir Training"; Margaret Nicholls—Novello's Elementary Music Manuals, No. 9.

"Class Singing for Schools"; C. V. Stanford—No. 2, Educational Library; Stainer & Bell, Ltd., 58 Berners St., London, W.I.

"The Boy's Changing Voice"; Mellalieu—Oxford University Press. Apply to the Anglo-Canadian Music Co., Toronto. (Price 35c.)

II.—EAR-TRAINING AND SIGHT-SINGING

See General Introduction under this heading.

Ear-training.

(1) Sol-fa names to be applied to short, easy phrases from the major mode, after they have been played or sung by the teacher.

(2) Short phrases from the major mode, sung or played by the teacher, to be written in staff notation in music dictation books.

Although song-singing forms the basis of the work for this grade, the importance of ear-training cannot be over-estimated. Writing from dictation should be continued. Special points of interest (e.g., imitations and sequences) connected with the structure of the music sung or played should also be noted. Simple melody-making may be introduced. At first, a short phrase is given by the teacher, to which the pupils add another phrase. In later stages of this work it may be possible to have the pupils add three phrases, making a four-phrase melody.

Sight-singing.

Singing at sight easy songs and other suitable music.

For this work the following books are recommended in addition to the song book mentioned above: "777 Exercises in Sight-Singing," Books II and III.

III.—MUSIC THEORY

3.—MUSIC THEORY

The theory to be taught in connection with Choral Music is such as is necessary for performing with musical understanding and correctness the selections that are chosen.

The following matters should receive attention:

(1) The two clefs; notes and rests (all values); time signatures; key signatures; accent and rhythm.

(2) The major and minor scales, as the material from which music is made. Practice in writing the scales in different keys.

(3) The marks of expression, and some of the common musical terms.

If circumstances permit, the terms *tonic*, *dominant*, etc., may be introduced, and the intervals and their inversions may be explained.

The following books are recommended to the teacher:

"Rudiments of Musical Knowledge"; Chas. W. Pearce—Boosey & Hawkes, Toronto.

"Rudiments of Music"; Stewart Macpherson—Jos. Williams, Ltd., 32 Portland St. W., London, England.

"School Music Handbook"—Cundiff & Dykema (C. C. Birchard Co., 221 Columbus Ave., Boston).

IV.—MUSIC APPRECIATION

Teacher is strongly recommended to read "General Introduction" to Music in the Intermediate School under this heading.

Musical culture through listening lessons is the aim of the course. Musical artists, or advanced piano students, may be called upon to perform the supporting music for this course, but more can be accomplished through the medium of phonographic records. The Victor educational and other records are especially recommended for use in this study.

TOPICAL OUTLINE

Folk-songs.

Folk-songs of various peoples; their form and national characteristics. The influence of geographical and political conditions affecting the quality of a nation's creative music.

The true *folk-song* has no traceably definite origin. Folk-songs arose as a spontaneous expression in music of some incident in the life of the common people. They are for this reason sometimes termed "the wild flowers" of music. Many are traditional, their origin lying far back of the time when a system of musical notation began to be developed. Their rhythm naturally followed that of the strophic poetry of the time and the simple metrical steps of the folk dances. They were passed down "by word of mouth" from generation to generation, until the time came when they might be registered in notation.

The Art Song.

This is definitely a composed song, and the product of musical cultivation and inspiration. There are two forms: the *strophic* and the *through-composed*. In the strophic, each stanza of the words carries the same melody, though the accompaniment may be different. In the through-composed, the progression of changing sentiments is accompanied throughout by an appropriate and enhancing musical figuration. The instrumental accompaniment is closely integrated with the song, and becomes a more important feature than in the case of the strophic art song or the folk-song.

The Opera.

Definition of the *opera*, and explanation of its chief features, including the *overture*, *recitative*, *aria*, *chorus*, *intermezzo*, *duet*, *trio*, *quartet*.

The story of the rise of the opera about the year 1600. The history of the opera need not be followed through in this grade, but records illustrating the different features, periods and composers should be used. See the Chapter on the opera, with suggested records, in "What We Hear in Music," by Anne Shaw Faulkner (Victor Phonograph Co.).

The Oratorio.

The *oratorio* defined. The story of the earliest experiments in oratorio about the year 1600.

The Mass and Sacred Cantata.

A brief explanation.

The Symphony Orchestra.

The orchestral sections or "choirs"; the different instruments in each section, illustrated by sound (records) and by picture. See "Instruments of the Orchestra" (Victor Phonograph Co., Montreal).

Textbook.

No textbook is prescribed for Music Appreciation. *The teacher should see that one or two reference books are placed in the school library. Problems and projects relating to the history of music and the biographies of great masters may be assigned to members of the class, who will search for their own material.*

It is suggested that in schools where but little equipment can be provided for Music Appreciation, the teacher use the "Music Appreciation Album for Upper Grades," put out by the Victor Phonograph Co. This album contains seven double records, a book of instructions, and cards illustrating different musical instruments. The approximate price is \$7.50.

To supplement this, where funds are available, the course included in "Students' Workbook and Teachers' Handbook in Music Appreciation" (Clarke, Irwin & Co.), which is listed below, is suggested.

TEACHERS' REFERENCE BOOKS

	Approx. Price
"What We Hear In Music": Faulkner-Victor Phonograph Co., Montreal	\$2.00
"Teaching Music from an Appreciative Basis"; Mohler—C. C. Birchard. 221 Columbus Ave., Boston, Mass.	2.00
"Music Appreciation Taught by Means of the Gramophone"; Stone—Scott, Foreman & Co., Chicago	.75
"First Lessons in Music Appreciation"; Mayne—J. M. Dent & Sons, Toronto	.85
"Listening Lessons in Music"; Fryberger—Silver Burdett & Co., 221 Columbus Ave., Boston	1.60
"Students' Workbook and "Teachers' Handbook in Music Appreciation"—Clarke, Irwin & Co., 86 Richmond St. West, Toronto.	
"Music Appreciation for the Junior High School"; Glen and Lowry— Silver Burdett & Co.	
"Music Appreciation for Children"—Victor.	

RECOMMENDED PHONOGRAPH RECORDS

Folk-songs.

English.

1238 Drink to Me Only with Thine Eyes.

19961 D'ye Ken John Peel?

Russian

6822 Volga Boat Song.

Scotch.

4083 Ye Banks and Braes.

4083 Scots Wha Hae.

Gaelic.

216521 O My Boatman!

Irish.

1238 Believe Me If All Those Endearing Young Charms.

4186 The Londonderry Air.

35878 Songs of Ireland.

Welsh.

- 1558 All Through the Night.

Italian.

- 1204 Santa Lucia.
1099 O Sole Mio.

French.

- 20152 The Duke of Marlborough.

French-Canadian. (See Victor special French-Canadian catalogue.)
Allouette.

German.

- 87021 True Love.
88547 The Lorelei.

Spanish.

- 64042 Linda Mia.

Norwegian.

- 65929 To Norway, Mother of the Brave.

Art Songs.

Schubert.

- 120822 Hark, Hark, the Lark.
17634 Who is Sylvia?
6927 Serenade.
7657 The Earl King.

Grieg.

- 6924 Solveig's Song.

Schumann.

- 6563 The Two Grenadiers.
15145 (Brunswick Recording) The Nut Tree.
64519 I'll Not Complain.

Brahms.

- 1756 Cradle Song.
8763 True Love.

Robert Franz.

- 88542 In Autumn.

Richard Strauss.

- 1726 All Souls' Day.

Dvorak.

- 87051 Songs My Mother Taught Me.

Opera.

- 7770 Celesta Aida (Verdi).
8105 Home to our Mountain—duet (Verdi).
35940 Gems from "Aida" (Verdi).
8091 Habanera, from "Carmen" (Bizet).
8124 Toreador (Bizet).

- 6563 O Star of Eve! (Wagner)
 1616 La Donna E Mobile (Verdi).

Opera Chorus.

- 20127 Anvil Chorus (Verdi).
 20127 Pilgrims' Chorus (Wagner).

Sacred Vocal Music.

Oratorio Chorus.

- 9125 And the Glory of the Lord (Handel).
 35767 Hallelujah Chorus (Handel).
 130804 We Bow Our Heads (Bach).
 9018 Behold the Lamb of God; Glory to God (Handel).

Cantata

- 35856 Hear My Prayer (Mendelssohn).

Mass.

- 35768 Gloria from the Twelfth Mass (Mozart).

Oratorio Solo.

- 120817 Hear Ye Israel from "Elijah" (Mendelssohn).

Orchestra.

- 1312 Ballet Music from "Rosamund" (Schubert).
 9059-60 Overture from "Tannhäuser" (Wagner).
 35924 Overture from "Raymond" (Thomas).
 20011 Intermezzo from "Cavalleria Rusticana" (Mascagni).
 35976 Intermezzo from "Jewels of the Madonna" (Wolf-Ferrari).

Orchestral Suites.

- 8662-4 Nut-Cracker Suite (Tschaikowsky).
 11834 and 11835 Peer Gynt (Grieg).
 7200-02 Carnival of the Animals (Saint-Saëns).

Symphonies.

- 6663-4-5 Unfinished Symphony (Schubert).
 6725-30 Symphony in D Minor (César Franck).
 9029-32 Symphony No. 5 (Beethoven).

Orchestra—Miscellaneous.

- 6505 Danse Macabre (Saint-Saëns).
 9009 Henry VIII Dances (German).
 8542-8545 Excerpts from "Die Walküre."
 20443 Narcissus (Nevin).
 6579 Flight of the Bumble-Bee (Rimsky-Korsakov).
 8702 Festival of Bagdad; Young Prince and the Young Princess (Rimsky Korsakov).

Solo Instrumental.

Piano.

- 8735-7836 Sonata in C Sharp Minor (Moonlight) (Beethoven).

Violin.

- 6691 Rondo (Schubert).

Organ.

6648 Largo (Handel).

Violoncello.

1143 The Swan (Saint-Saëns).

1143 Moment Musicale (Schubert).

Note.—Certain records of the foregoing list have been given new numbers in the recent catalogue of the Victor Company. Information relating to numbers which cannot be found in the new catalogue may be obtained by writing to the Victor Phonograph Company, Camden, New Jersey.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Music in the Junior High School—Karl W. Gehrken (C. C. Birchard Co., Boston).
2. Music in the Junior High School—McConathy et al (W. J. Gage & Co., Toronto).
3. The Psychology of School Music Teaching—Mursell & Glenn (W. J. Gage and Co., Toronto).
4. Principles of Musical Education—Mursell (Macmillan, Toronto).
5. Music Education—Thirty-fifth Yearbook, Part II (National Society for the Study of Education, Public School Publishing Co., Bloomington, Ill., 1936).
6. Yearbook, Music Educators National Conference, 64 East Jackson Blvd., Chicago, Ill.
7. Music Educators Journal (5 issues yearly), 64 East Jackson Blvd., Chicago.
8. Music in the Schools—Monthly Magazine (Novello & Co., London, Eng.).
9. Music Integration in the Junior High School—Lilla B. Pitts (C. C. Birchard Co., Boston).
10. Creative School Music—Fox & Hopkins (W. J. Gage & Co.).
11. Music in Rural Education—McConathy et al (W. J. Gage & Co., Toronto).
12. Three Short Talks on Singing—H. P. Greene (Western Music Co., Vancouver).

FARM AND HOME ACCOUNTING

GRADES VII AND VIII

The Bookkeeping in Grades VII and VIII must necessarily be simple. The purpose of the course will be to make the pupil conscious of the general principle behind the recording of simple business transactions in buying and selling which come within his experience. It should influence him to keep systematically a record of the transactions in which he is personally involved, as a party to home management or as a participant in some club feature, such as feeding a baby-beef animal, a swine venture or other interest involving exchange values. The idea of debit and credit can be taught so that its elementary meaning becomes fairly clear. Simple business forms such as an account, an invoice, a statement, a receipt, an order, a cheque, a money order, a deposit slip, a financial statement, credit balance and debit balance should be taught. An elementary discussion of buying, selling and credit should be conducted, but the subject matter should be kept within the range of experience of the pupil.

The course outlined may be taken either in Grade VII or VIII, but preferably in the latter. In a school with small enrolment, the two classes can be combined with profit. At least *four* of the projects specified below should be completed by each pupil. The more capable pupils may succeed in completing six of them.

It is fundamentally important that neatness and accuracy be observed. For this reason, it might be well to work out the first two or more projects on paper ruled to match the ruling in the printed blank. At least two projects, however, should be worked out by use of the printed blanks as the books of original entry.

Financial statements should be made at the conclusion of each project. The accuracy of the work should be checked frequently.

The course will consist of at least *four* projects as outlined in "Bookkeeping Projects," Stock No. 514, South-Western Publishing Co.

This working material will be required by every pupil. It includes the "Narrative of Transactions for Bookkeeping Projects," "Cash Journals," and "Ledgers." There is also a "Key" for the use of the teacher.

TEACHER'S REFERENCE:

Bookkeeping for Immediate Use—Kirk, Street and Odell (John C. Winston & Co.).

ELEMENTARY BOOKKEEPING AND JUNIOR BUSINESS

GRADE IX

FOREWORD

The purpose of the course in Elementary Bookkeeping and Junior Business is to give young students in Grade IX a general picture of what is going on in the business world today. The course will be very broad and cover a large number of topics. It is out of the question to expect that these topics should be discussed in great detail. Certain topics will have a special appeal and be of special benefit to students in a particular community; and teachers will do well to give emphasis accordingly. In general, it will be found that special stress must be placed on the application of the topics to rural conditions in Alberta.

Students in Grade IX will be on the average about fourteen or fifteen years of age. The background of these students in most business affairs will be very limited; particularly in the case of students from rural communities.

The course is designed to fit the needs of these students. Some of them will be dropping out of school, others will be going on to Technical or Academic High School, and a third group will enter the Commercial High School. Irrespective of what becomes of any individual student after he completes the work of the Intermediate School, it is necessary that all the students have some general ideas of the business world. The course in Junior Business should be prepared and taught with this as the underlying purpose.

Because the students are young and inexperienced, it will be difficult for them to make sound decisions on controversial points. These points should not be avoided, nor should there be any propaganda either for the traditional or for the radical view. The attention of the students should be called to the two sides of the

controversy and every effort made to present both sides fairly. If a thoughtful and challenging attitude can be developed in the students, it will form the basis for real education.

TEXTBOOKS AND REFERENCE BOOKS

No textbook has been authorized. The Department of Education, however, has prepared a small manual for the use of pupils and teachers.

Some of the reference books listed below should be placed in the school library. Teachers will find the first two or three of the books mentioned especially helpful.

- (1) "Our Business Life"; Lloyd L. Jones—Gregg Publishing Co., 1936, pp. 660.
- (2) "Introduction to Business"; Kirk, Buckley & Waesche—The John C. Winston Co., 1932, pp. 478.
"Manual and Key"; (Teacher's) for "Introduction to Business"—Buckley and Waesche—John C. Winston Co.
- (3) "Bookkeeping for Immediate Use"; Kirk, Street and Odell—John C. Winston Co., 1934, pp. 393.
- (4) "The Business of Life"; ZuTavern and Bullock—Commercial Textbook Co.
- (5) "New Junior Business Training"; Frederick G. Nichols—American Book Co., 1930, pp. 388.
- (6) "Essential of Business Practice"; Beattie & Bennett—Sir Isaac Pitman and Sons (Canada), Ltd., 1935, pp. 196.
- (7) "Business Training"; A. E. ZuTavern—Commercial Text Book Co., South Pasadena, California, 1930, pp. 120.

ELEMENTARY BOOKKEEPING

A Business Transaction is an exchange of values. This should be discussed fully with the students, stressing particularly those business problems with which the student is most likely to be familiar with.

Assets, Liabilities, and Proprietorship.

The student should be taught at the outset what Assets and Liabilities are and their relationship to Capital. The fundamental bookkeeping equation, "Assets—Liabilities=Capital" should be illustrated by means of several problems.

Debit and Credit.

The terms "Debit" and "Credit" should be fully explained, and three or four simple rules should be formulated for the debiting and crediting of accounts as the discussion progresses.

Several exercises on debit and credit should be worked out.

Bookkeeping Records.

The Account: Definition and illustrations.

The Account should be used to stress the necessity of accuracy and systematic arrangement of financial facts. While discussing the Account the terms "Posting" and "Folio" should be introduced.

Explain the method of recording transactions to the Cash, Purchases and Sales Accounts. Several lessons should be spent on these accounts to show the student the value of an account and to teach him the use of these accounts in business.

Ledger Rulings.

Centre Ruling and Bank Ledger Rulings should be taught.

Books of Original Entry.

The term Book of Original Entry should be fully explained.

The Sales Book.

A sample form of a Sales Book should be studied, preferably the carbon copy method. As this method is used by most groceries and small stores, the student will be more or less familiar with the form of charge sheet as made by this method.

Exercises on the Sales Book.

The Purchase Book.

A thorough study should be made of a Purchase Book having at least three columns in which to show an analysis of what the purchases were made for.

Several exercises on the Purchase Book.

The Cash Book.

Give a thorough explanation of the two money columned Cash Book and at least four complete Cash Book Exercises should be worked out.

Personal Accounts.

The reason for subdividing the ledger into General, Sales and Purchase divisions should be discussed and ample practice in posting from the Books of Original Entry to the personal and impersonal accounts should be given.

The Trial Balance.

The Trial Balance should be discussed under the following headings:

- (a) Its use.
- (b) Errors a Trial Balance will not disclose.
- (c) Locating errors.

Work Set.

A simple set of books should be kept for a small business showing the business transactions for a one month period, introducing the Sales, Purchases and Cash Books, and the three ledgers General, Sales and Purchase. A Trial Balance should be prepared from the student's own records.

The Merchandise Inventory.

- (a) How prepared.
- (b) Its use in the Trading Statement and the Balance Sheet.

The Trading Statement.

The Trading Statement should be taught in the Statement and the Account Forms. Ample exercises.

The Profit and Loss Statement.

This financial statement should be taught in both forms, Statement and Account. Several exercises.

The Balance Sheet.

Prepare the Balance Sheet in the Statement and Account Forms. Give several

exercises. The Balance Sheet should be used to show that the correctness of your work can be proven.

The Recapitulation of Sales.

This account should be discussed at the time the Sales Book is being taught. It should be used to impress the student with the value of economizing in space and postings.

Important Notices:

1. Pupils will be required to work out some "sets" or projects in Bookkeeping as practical applications of the theory set forth in the foregoing outline. The material required will be prepared in mimeographed or printed form by the Department of Education, and be made available for distribution through the School Book Branch at the beginning of September.
2. "A Teacher's Guide in Junior Business" may also be had from the School Book Branch.

JUNIOR BUSINESS

I.—INTRODUCTION TO BUSINESS:

- A. Definition.
- B. History.
- C. Supply and Demand.
- D. Motivation.
- E. Interdependence.

II.—BUSINESS OWNERSHIP:

- A. Single Proprietorship.
- B. Partnership.
- C. Companies.
- D. Government Ownership.
- E. Government Regulation.
- F. Division of Governmental Legislation.
- G. Public Utilities.

III.—PRODUCTION:

- A. Basic Production.
- B. Manufacturing Processes.

IV.—MARKETING:

- A. Manufacturer's Agent.
- B. Broker.
- C. Commission Merchant.
- D. Wholesale Dealer.
- E. Retailer: General store; specialty store; department stores; mail order houses; chain stores; association; co-operative stores; direct selling; auction; cash-and-carry.
- F. Marketing of Wheat: Elevators; handling of grain; selling; Wheat Pool; purchasers of grain; grading; weighing; grain exchange; hedging; options; quotations; units; world wheat situation; future of Canadian farmer.

V.—ADVERTISING:

- A. Purposes.
- B. Forms.
- C. Appeals.
- D. Advantages to the Public.
- E. Protection for the Consumer.

VI.—SALESMANSHIP:

- A. Basis of Sales: Profit to buyer; profit to seller; mutual confidence.
- B. Problems of Selling: Customer; salesman; knowledge of goods.
- C. Protection for Consumer.

VII.—STORAGE:

- A. Services of Storage: Constant supply of seasonal goods; constant production of seasonal goods; smoothing irregularities of market; smoothing irregularities of price; curing and ripening; grading and mixing; pool cars.
- B. The Costs of Storage.
- C. Some of the Kinds of Storage.

VIII.—TRANSPORTATION:

- A. History.
- B. Highway Transportation.
- C. Railroad Transportation: Kinds of trains; kinds of tickets; miscellaneous information on tickets; sleeping accommodation; baggage; accident insurance; dining cars; additional services.
- D. Water Transportation: Classes of accommodation: Atlantic; Pacific; coastal boats; lakes; rivers; kinds of boats; improvements in ocean transportation.
- E. Air Transportation.
- F. Carrying Money: Travellers' cheques; letters of credit.

IX.—SHIPPING:

- A. History.
- B. Methods: Freight; express; mail.
- C. Customs.
- D. Packing.

X.—COMMUNICATION:

- A. History.
- B. Mail: Importance of business letters; main points in writing business letters; purposes of business letters; circular letters; Canadian postal system: letters; air mail; post card; reply coupons; business reply envelopes; special delivery; registration; open letters; dead letters; forwarding letters; postal meters; postal permits; stamps; franking.
- C. Telephone: History; kinds of telephones; kinds of service; kinds of calls.
- D. Telegraph: Kinds of service; chargeable words; confirming messages.
- E. Cables: Kinds of service; chargeable words; code messages; cipher messages.
- F. Wireless.
- G. Radio.

XI.—REMITTANCES:

- A. Cash.
- B. Stamps.
- C. Negotiable Instruments.
- D. Postal Note.
- E. Post Office Money Order.
- F. Telegraphic Money Order.
- G. Express Money Order.
- H. Bank Money Order.
- I. Bank Drafts.

XII.—CREDIT SYSTEM:

- A. The Need for Credit.
- B. Monetary System.
- C. Legal Tender.
- D. How Business is Financed.
- E. Acquiring and Maintaining Credit.
- F. Credit Rating Agencies.
- G. Credit versus Cash Buying.
- H. Instalment Buying.
- I. Secured creditors.

XIII.—OUR FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS:

- A. Bank of Canada.
- B. Chartered Banks: Introduction; bank accounts; negotiable instruments; safety deposit boxes; loans; safeguards for noteholders; safeguards for depositors.
- C. Trust Companies.
- D. Mortgage and Loan Companies.
- E. Insurance Companies.
- F. Security Brokers.

XIV.—THRIFT:

- A. True Meaning of Thrift.
- B. Kinds of Thrift: Thrift in time; thrift in energy; thrift in money matters.

XV.—BUDGETS:

- A. Purpose.
- B. Household Budgets.
- C. Business Budgets.
- D. Government Budgets.
- E. Living within Budget.

XVI.—INVESTMENTS:

- A. Speculation.
- B. Investment.
- C. Essentials before Investing: Safety; yield; marketability; full details.
- D. Types of Investment: Savings account in chartered bank; savings in postal bank; loan and trust companies (savings account); bonds; stocks; insurance; annuities; real estate; mortgages.

XVII.—BUSINESS FORMS:

- A. Deposit Slips.
- B. Cheques.
- C. Promissory Notes.
- D. Acceptances.
- E. Requisitions.
- F. Inquiries.
- G. Purchase Orders.
- H. Bills.
- I. Credit Invoices.
- J. Monthly Statements.
- K. Receipts.
- L. Vouchers.
- M. Financial Statements.
- N. Graphs.

XVIII.—FILING:

- A. Purposes.
- B. History.
- C. Kinds of Vertical Filing: Alphabetical; numerical; direct name; geographical; subject; visible card.

XIX.—OFFICE MACHINES AND APPLIANCES:

- A. Typewriters.
- B. Adding Machines.
- C. Cash Registers.
- D. Protectographs.
- E. Calculating Machines.
- F. Duplicating Machines: Gelatin pad; mimeograph; multigraph.
- G. Addressograph.
- H. Billing Machine.
- I. Dictograph.
- J. Dictaphone.
- K. Stenotype.
- L. Bookkeeping Machines.

XX.—FUNDAMENTALS OF CONTRACT:

- A. Extent of Contract.
- B. Essentials of Binding Contract: Offer and acceptance; consideration of form; capacity to contract; genuine consent; legality of object.
- C. Discharge of Contract.
- D. Remedies for Breach of Contract: Damages; specific performance; injunction.

XXI.—BUSINESS REFERENCES:

- A. Dictionary.
- B. Telephone Directory.
- C. City Directory.
- D. Credit Rating Book.
- E. Price Lists and Catalogues.

- F. Postal Information.
- G. Canada Year Book.
- H. Periodicals.
- I. Newspapers.
- J. Almanacs.
- K. Express Classification.
- L. Canadian Trade Index.

TYPEWRITING

GRADES VII, VIII AND IX

The following is the authorized textbook for this course: "High School Typewriting"; Roszell and Hewitt—Gregg Publishing Co. This textbook is to be taken as the outline of the course.

ORAL FRENCH

GRADE IX

The course in Oral French is planned primarily for districts having a French-speaking teacher. It aims to give pupils the advantage of a year in oral French, without requiring them to take an academic course and prepare for a written examination, which would necessarily demand a more rapid advance, and a more conscious use of the grammatical forms and idioms of the language.

To teach this course successfully, the teacher requires a two-fold equipment: (1) the ability to converse freely in the language; and (2) a clear conception of the principles underlying language training. A French-speaking teacher may find himself unable to secure good results through failure to recognize the best methods of developing language ability. An English-speaking teacher may have a clear conception of the psychological principles involved in skilful teaching, but may be incapacitated by lack of facility in the language.

The course as planned will be actively oral. Reading and writing will be introduced only as aids to assist in the active acquirement of the language. The ear, the tongue, and the eye must be trained before any writing is done. The natural method of childhood should be kept in mind. The ear is carefully trained; then the tongue attempts the sounds; later the eye sees and reads them; and still later the pupil writes what he has heard and said and seen. As this training advances, the mind must always comprehend the language forms presented. The teacher must display good judgment in presenting the material. Monotony is to be avoided. Through skilfully planned repetition and carefully directed drill, the pupil must be led to express himself within the limits of the vocabulary he has acquired.

The Camerlynck text has been chosen for this course because it contains a suitable body of carefully graded language material. Teachers should not attempt to cover the whole book in one year. *The course should be kept very flexible.* It is expected that singing, dramatics, games and various forms of language drill will be introduced by way of stimulating interest and affording a maximum of practice. The course may be taught in a variety of ways, according to the special ability of the teacher. One teacher might specialize on conversation, another on dramatic work, another on singing, another on games, and still another on a combination of two or more of these types of work. But it is not intended that an individual teacher shall make use of all these devices for maintaining interest. Indeed an extremely skilful teacher can maintain the enthusiasm of the class without any of

these more formal aids, as the acquisition of the power of expression through the forms of a new language is exciting enough to keep the ordinary class alert.

It is recommended that classes in this course be limited to twenty pupils; that pupils of less than average intelligence be not admitted to the course; and that no teacher attempt the course who is not properly qualified to use French as the language of instruction.

Special Notice to Teachers.

1. *Teachers are warned against the mistake of supposing that this course is substantially the same as French 1 of the High School Programme.* The two are quite different. This is a course in *oral* French: a course in which the training is preponderantly that of the *ear and tongue*, and only to a small extent that of the eye and hand. The High School course—as it works out in practice—is a course in which the reading of French and the writing of it according to grammatical rules are the main objectives. *This course gives no credit for French 1.* Students who complete it and continue the subject in the High School will still be required to take French 1, which is a beginner's course.

2. Some teachers who offer this course prefer to omit the reading and writing of French entirely, making the course purely one of ear-and-tongue training. *Nothing that has been suggested in the outline above stands in the way of this procedure.* In fact, there are strong reasons for the use of this procedure in beginner's classes. (See "The Principles of Language Study," listed below.)

The course is to be kept flexible. It will not, therefore, be necessary that all teachers approach it in the same way. The one and only requirement is that it be made a course in *oral* French.

3. *The following books should be carefully studied by all teachers who conduct classes in Oral French in the Intermediate School:*

- (1) "The Principles of Language Study"; Harold E. Palmer—World Book Co., Yonkers-on-Hudson, N.Y.
- (2) "The Cleveland Plan"; E. B. de Sauzé—John C. Winston Co., Toronto.

Recommended Textbooks:

1. "France—Première Année de Français"; Camerlynck and Camerlynck—Allyn and Bacon.
2. "Pour les Petits"; Camerlynck and Camerlynck.
3. "Parlons Français"; Camerlynck and Camerlynck.
4. "Mes Premiers Pas en Français"; Chapuzet et Daniels—D. C. Heath & Co.
5. "French with a Smile"; P. J. B. Neilson—Thos. Nelson & Sons.
6. "Coquerico"—Ginn & Co.

The first book mentioned above is recommended for general use as a textbook. The second may be used in place of the first in schools where only a small amount of time is available for the course. In some schools teachers may find the third or the fourth preferable to the first or the second.

The last two are suggested as reading books. Their use is recommended only where a considerable amount of time is devoted to the course, and only with classes that make rapid progress. The material they contain, when used, is not to be translated into English, but is to be read rapidly for oral practice and aural comprehension.

GENERAL SHOP

General Shop courses offer a special contribution to the educational process by providing fundamental experiences at a vital period of growth. By means of the abundant opportunities they present for the reception of a wide range of sensory impressions and for the co-ordination, direction and control of motor responses, they assist in the mental development of the individual in a manner that is not exceeded by any other subject of instruction. Through the exercise of the creative impulse, the student-worker also experiences the uplifting satisfaction that comes from seeing the product of his own brain and hand. In those creative exercises involving personal participation in constructive projects, the student acquires a valuable means of self-expression that ought to make his life more enjoyable and more useful whether he engages in a vocation that demands manual skill or he uses it avocationally as an outlet for a pent-up physical urge. Because of those experiences he becomes more adaptable in the environment in which he may find himself. He should be able to make finer and better judgments involving complex factors in actual life situations. Upon this ability depends much of the success he may achieve during his life time.

In addition to these major benefits, the student becomes acquainted with some of the more important tools, materials and processes used in industry; he learns the importance of planning and of orderly procedure as necessary steps in any type of production; he develops an appreciation of the thought, labor and skill embodied in the things by which he is surrounded; and he is led to respect the workers and the work in the great field of manual and mechanical activities. He gains a degree of skill in the operations he performs and discovers the extent of his mechanical aptitude; he is more likely to choose a vocation suited to his tastes and abilities.

Range.

The work of the general shop should be as varied as possible—the limitation being the degree of versatility on the part of the teacher and the range of available equipment and material.

Time.

The minimum time allotment for the full General Shop programme in all grades, for credit purposes, should be one half-day per week. Time for Drafting in Grades VII and VIII should not exceed twenty clock hours during the year. The remainder of the allotted time should be divided equally between the other phases selected. In Grade IX the time for Drafting should not exceed twelve hours, the remaining time to be divided equally between the two or three phases chosen.

Method.

In every phase of work, emphasis must be placed on a thorough analyses of each problem. The procedure should be somewhat as follows: A project is selected; its requirements are investigated—function, size, proportion, disposition and strength of parts, methods of jointing, artistic possibility, etc.; a dimensioned sketch is made; a statement of the material required is worked out and set down; the operations to be performed are listed in their proper order. A finished drawing of the project should be made when time permits. To secure maximum training value

it is essential that the project be seen in the imagination as a finished product and worked out step by step to a realization of the mental image. No two pieces in the classwork may be or should be exactly alike. The whole class may, however, complete similar projects provided that the sizes or designs are different and exhibit individually, and that each one is made from an individual drawing or sketch. Students who have had little or no previous experience in handwork should be directed to choose the simpler examples in each phase of work. Those who have proved skill from previous experience should be given more difficult projects.

Phases of Work for Each Grade

GRADE VII		GRADE VIII		GRADE IX	
Drafting	Compulsory	Drafting	Compulsory	Drafting	Compulsory
Woodwork	Compulsory	Woodwork	Optional	Woodwork	Optional
Metal	Optional	Metal		Metal	Optional
Electricity	Optional	Electricity	One	Art Metal	Optional
Wire	Optional	Plastic	Compulsory	Electricity	Optional
Plastic		Materials		Automotives	Optional
Materials	Optional	Paper	Optional	Farm Mechanics	Optional
Paper	Optional	Leather	Optional	Leather Craft	Optional
Leather	Optional	Bent or Venetian Iron	Optional	Concrete	Optional
Printing	Optional	Printing	Optional	Printing	Optional

N.B.—See also *Farm Mechanics*, below.

In all the grades, Drafting is compulsory for all students. In Grade VII, students must take Wood, and one additional phase as set out above. In Grade VIII, a choice may be made between Metal, Electricity and Plastic Materials, and one additional phase must be taken. In Grade IX, a wider choice is permissible. *At least two phases must be chosen in addition to Drafting, and not more than three.*

Minimum Requirements.

There are no standardized minimum requirements set out for any grade. The weaker student may not achieve so much as the more capable, but he may have made more relative progress. All students should be employed to their maximum capabilities. The teacher will be the judge as to the type of assignment any student will take and these should be graded according to ability. This arrangement increases the responsibility of the teacher, but allows him greater freedom in developing the individuality of the pupil.

Combination of Grades.

In smaller centres it will be practicable to combine the shop work of Grades VII, VIII and IX if the number of students in the group is not too large, and adequate facilities are available. It must be kept in mind at all times that General Shop provides for the individual differences among pupils, even allowing individuals to work with different media in any one class period. There should be no difficulty in having those from different grades working in a shop at the same time.

Combination of Work.

Projects involving two or more phases of work are to be encouraged as these correlations embody the essence of the general shop idea and constitute the natural means of integrating the several phases of the work done in the general shop. It is proper in interpreting this course to permit the selection of any project within the possibilities of the shop and the ability of the student.

Choices for Boys and Girls.

Girls may choose General Shop as an option or boys may choose Home Economics.

Maintenance of Shop.

Instructors must keep in mind that a fundamental requirement of a general shop programme is that *the shop shall be kept neat and tidy at all times*. Tools should have definite places and be kept in these places when not in use. The benches must be brushed down and left clean. Lumber and models shall be stored neatly and the shop kept in an orderly manner. Floors shall be swept and a high standard of neatness maintained. Every effort should be made to keep the shop attractive. The silent impact of system, neatness and orderliness is most important in the proper functioning of General Shop.

Records.

Each student shall have a notebook in which he will keep a brief daily record of work done; a shop-dimensioned sketch of each project; notes on each project, and on materials, tools, design, etc., discussed in connection with each phase of work.

Teachers shall keep a dated record on the instructional talks and demonstrations given; also a list of students showing the projects completed by each and the previous manual experience of each. These records must be available at all times for Departmental inspection.

Objectives.

An important objective to be kept in mind at all times is the training of the individual student in the fundamentals of the subject, allowing at the same time full sway for the expression of his individuality.

More specifically, the instructor should keep before him constantly the following educational objectives:

1. To provide an opportunity for creative expression and problem-solving through the medium of tools and materials.
2. To satisfy the desire which boys have to express themselves through the medium of tools and materials.
3. To develop habits of neatness, orderliness and accuracy.
4. To inculcate respect for honest labor and an understanding of its social significance.
5. To assist the student in the better choice and use of industrial products and services.
6. To develop normal ability in the use of common tools that may be of direct use in earning a living or in pleasantly using leisure time.

Correlation with English, Social Studies, Science, Mathematics, Geography, History, and Art should be made whenever and wherever possible.

Textbook for General Shop

Woodwork for Junior High Schools, by Alexander S. Hamilton (Grades VII, VIII and IX).

Reference Book for Concrete Work: *A Practice Course in Concrete*: Portland Cement Association, Canada Cement Company.

Reference Books

- Design for Industrial Arts*, Woodwork, Book I—Kyle (Nelson).
Hand Woodworking—Evand, Park, and Slatteric (Ryerson Press).
Art and Education in Wood Turning—W. W. Klenke.
Handcraft in Wood and Metal—Hooper and Shirley (Manual Arts Press).
Principles of Wood Working—Hjorth (Bruce Publishing Company).
How to Work with Tools and Wood (Stanley Rule and Level Company).
Coping Saw Work—Johnson (Manual Arts Press).
Rushwork (The Dryad Press, Leicester, England).
Inexpensive Basketry—Martin (Manual Arts Press).
Farm Woodwork—Roehl (Bruce Publishing Company).
Boy Mechanics—Popular Mechanics Press, Chicago. (Several volumes.)
Furniture Boys Like to Build—Shaver (Bruce Publishing Company).
The Boy Craftsman—Hall (Lathrop, Lee and Shepard).
Toy Making—Mitchell (Manual Arts Press).
Educational Toys—Peterson (Manual Arts Press).
Instructional Units in Handwork—Brown and Thurston (Bruce Publishing Company).
A Laboratory Course in Wood Turning—Golden (American Book Company).
Wood Turning—Ross (Ginn and Company).
Birdhouse Architecture—Baxter (Bruce Publishing Company).
Permanent Bird Houses—Gladstone Califf (Bruce Publishing Company).
Design in Wood Work—Wells (Batsford).
Design for Industrial Arts, Metal Work—John Kyle (Nelson).
Metal Work Essentials—Tustison and Kranzusch (Bruce Publishing Company).
Metal Work for Grades VII, VIII, and IX—Jones (Bruce Publishing Company).
Forging—Jernberg (American Technical Society, Chicago).
Metal Work Projects—Peterson (Bruce).
Metal Work—Adams and Evans (Longmans Green and Company).
Elementary Wrought Iron Work—Bollenger (Bruce).
General Metal Work—Grayson (D. Van Nostrand).
Cold Metal Working—Van Lenven (McGraw-Hill Company).
Problems in Metal Work—Butler (Manual Arts Press).
Introductory Metal Working Problems—Bell and Shaeffer (Manual Arts Press).
Bench Metal Work—Giachino (Manual Arts Press).
Repoussé Work for Beginners—Haslope (Scribners).
Art Metal Work with Inexpensive Equipment—Payne (Manual Arts Press).
Metal Working and Etching—Adams (Popular Mechanics Press, Chicago).
Everyday Electricity—J. R. Lunt (Macmillan).
Applied Electricity—E. W. Jones (Bruce Publishing Company).
Junior Electricity—Gordon Darling (W. J. Gage & Company).
Auto and Gasoline Engine Encyclopedia—Dyke (Goodhart and Wilcox, Chicago).
Automotive Essentials—Kuns (Bruce Publishing Company).
Automotive Service—Kuns (Bruce Publishing Company).
Principles of Automobile Mechanics—Selvidge and Kelsey (Manual Arts Press).
Leatherwork for Boys and Girls—Poole (University of London Press).
The Handicraft of Wood Carving—Jackson (Sir Isaac Pitman & Sons).

Artistic Practical Handicraft Series—Glass (Clarke Irwin, Toronto).

Practical Course in Concrete—Portland Cement Association.

Company service manuals of present-day cars.

GRADE VII.

DRAFTING (Compulsory for all. Time allotment—20 hours).

Use of tee-square, set-square, compasses, dividers and rule.

The divisions on a 12'' rule; the importance of exact measurements.

Simple problems of plane geometry as needed for construction drawing: arcs, angles, perpendiculars, parallels, plane figures.

Development of common solids: cube, cylinder, pyramid; reference to simple applications.

Drawing of simple joints or simple models made from measurements of actual pieces, full size.

Simple scale drawings of models or projects made by the student, half-size; one and a half inches to a foot. Oblique projection.

Marking sizes on drawings with neat figures and proper dimension lines. Lettering in plain Roman letters. Shop sketching and dimensioning.

One finished drawing of a wood work, or surface development for a metal project model made by the student.

Four plates 12''×18'' should be completed.

WOODWORK (Time allotment—40 hours).

Squaring up a rough piece of soft wood; planing to definite size; projects requiring the use of the following tools: jack plane, try-square, rule, marking gauge, marking knife, backsaw, smoothing plane.

Suggested Projects.

Board exercises involving the squaring of ends to definite length—hat rail, cutting board, window box.

Squaring up and making dado joint.—Book rack, mail box, book shelves.

Cross-lap joint with such projects as stool, book case, tabouret.

Toy Making.

Make toys using such lumber as plywood or apple-box boards, and such tools as bowsaw or coping saw, with patterns or templates.

Suggested Projects.

Silhouettes of animals—rabbit, elephant, giraffe, kangaroo, mounted on movable platforms with wheels cut from cylindrical wood; characteristic patterns. Movement toys make interesting projects—"Tumbling Tom", moving figures on ladders, rocking horse, toy cradles, wheelbarrows, go-carts, toy furniture. These should be stained or painted with characteristic colors or patterns.

Care of tools—use of oilstone for sharpening knives and chisels, proper use of tools, maintenance of the shop.

Simple wood finishing—sandpapering, priming, painting, staining, varnishing.

Textbook:

Woodwork for Junior High Schools, by Alexander S. Hamilton (Copp Clark Co.)

METAL (Time allotment—40 hours).

Sheet Metal.

Simple models involving thin sheet iron, tinned iron; use of snips, sawing, filing, bending, folding, riveting, soldering.

Methods of laying-out surface developments, either for a cardboard template or directly on the metal to avoid waste.

Suggested Projects.

Match box, pin tray, bake tin or pie tin, tin cup, pan, cookie cutter.

Wire-Work.

Bending and shaping wire of various gauges to make useful articles.

Suggested Projects.

Set of meat skewers; bill file; toasting fork; sock stretchers; coat hangers; poker; ash scraper; cake cooler stand; broom holder; bottle washer; egg stand; egg lift; wire spoon; soap dish; potato masher; batter beater; lamp shade holder; flower standard; flower basket.

PLASTIC MATERIALS (Time allotment—40 hours).

Modelling geometrical solids in clay to get the feel of the medium. Moving forms including animals; groups allowing range for imagination; plaques, simple vessels; tinting and coloring.

Papier mâché.

Preparation and use in making simple models; coloring; raised or contour map.

Cement.

Simple models—tea-pot stand, stepping-stone slabs, foot-scraper base, small drinking trough; decorating garden pieces; manufacture of brick, tile, and various blocks.

N.B.—See the reference book mentioned in the corresponding section of the Grade VIII outline.

LEATHER (Time allotment—40 hours).

Leather manufacture and characteristics—cutting, stitching, punching, thonging, fastening with wax-end and rivet; eyelets, snap fasteners, zippers, glue.

Suggested Projects.

Watch fob, baggage label, key case, dog collar, belt straps for various purposes, music portfolio, book cover, wrist watch strap, simple purse, leather cuffs, leggings, scissors case, chair backs.

Surface finishing and decoration. Staining and dyeing.

PAPER AND CARDBOARD (Time allotment—40 hours).

Development of surface, laying-out, cutting, trimming, fastening, pasting, cover papers, decorating, lining papers.

Suggested Projects.

Simple boxes for various purposes and of different shapes—pin trays, handkerchief cases, candy boxes, cartons for various purposes; portfolio; snapshot album; scrapbook.

Simple book-binding; note-book covers; decorative forms for advertising; decorating and lettering.

PRINTING (Time allotment—40 hours).

Study of the case, inserting letters and characters, type measurement; the point system; relation to lineal measurement; spacing material; composing stick; care of type; setting-up exercises involving paragraph indentions, capitals, numerals, Roman numerals and punctuation; type indentions illustrated by setting-up exercises; simple tabulations of words and figures; initial letters; simple exercises in panel work; exercises in reprinting type forms, e.g., prose paragraphs, cards; pulling proofs, proof-reading and correcting copy using conventional signs.

ELECTRICITY (Time allotment—40 hours).

Generation of electricity; chemical generation in the bichromatic cell. A battery of cells connected to a small load with a voltmeter and an ammeter in the circuit. General explanation of the terms volt, ampere, ohm, and kilowatt-hour, as applied to a simple circuit.

Suggested Projects.

Generating current for a buzzer, a bell, a flash-light; lighting a doll's house, a toy store; a 6-volt direct current soldering iron.

Electrical Heating. Construction of electrical heating elements connected to the alternating current 110-volt line. Use of tables showing length and gauge of nichrome wire for various jobs. Explanation of the terms volt, ampere, ohm, kilowatt-hour.

Suggested Projects.

Assembling or repairing, immersion heater, soldering iron, table stove, cigarette lighter, toasters, flat-irons and other devices.

Electrical Lighting. Wiring a lighting circuit with switch and several bulbs in series and parallel. Making and soldering simple joints like the "pig-tail" and "western union." Explanation of the terms volt, ampere, ohm, and kilowatt-hour, as applied to a simple lighting circuit, supplied from the 110-volt line or from batteries.

Suggested Projects.

Wiring a table lamp, a floor lamp, a doll's house, a plays store, a Christmas tree; transparent plate for front door; illuminated decorations for a party; an outfit for swinging colored lights rhythmically on the darkened stage.

Electro-magnetic pull. Making permanent magnets. Construction of electro-magnets.

Suggested Projects.

Horseshoe magnet; pointed magnet for removing metal chips from lathe; magnetic screw-driver; magnetic support for holding sheetmetal in place for soldering. Electric bell, buzzer.

FARM MECHANICS (One year's work; one half-day per week. Grades VII and VIII may be combined).

This course in Farm Mechanics is designed for rural schools with two rooms. The time allotment is one half-day per week. If cold weather is a serious handicap for shop work, the instructor may assign to shop-work one school-day per week during September, October, April, May, and June. *The approval of the Inspector must be secured before this option is offered. If this option is selected the full time of the General Shop for the year may be devoted to it.*

The aim of Farm Mechanics is resourcefulness in the construction, the upkeep, and the repair of farm conveniences, with tools and materials that are available on the average farm. The instructor may choose a *MINIMUM OF THREE PHASES in any one year, ONE OF WHICH SHALL BE WOODWORK.* Suggested projects may be selected from the lists below.

1.—Woodwork.

Suggested Projects.—Outdoor conveniences: Repairing and fitting of doors, sashes, padlocks; utility and ornamental fences; feed and water troughs; self-feeders for poultry and stock; ladders; wheelbarrows; hayricks; hotbed frames; swing.

Indoor conveniences: Repair and fitting of doors and sashes, locks; taking out old putty, glazing and putting in sashes; repairing screen doors and screened sashes; flower-boxes, flower-stands, wash benches, wall shelves, wall-brackets, kitchen-stools, feed scoops, wood boxes, coal boxes, frames for rug-making, ironing boards, sleeve boards.

2.—Blacksmithing.

How to build a forge fire; heating iron, welding, tempering.

Suggested Projects.—Repair of chains, replacing hooks, large-size hinges. Making chain links, gate hooks, gate hinges, clevises.

3.—Concrete.

How to make concrete; proportions of ingredients; wooden forms.

Suggested Projects.—Concrete slabs for door-step or foot scraper; concrete sidewalk; wall concrete blocks with hole for leading stove-pipes safely through partitions. Small concrete foundations for barns, garages, chicken houses, hot-beds.

4.—Painting.

Brief discussion of paint, its manufacture, qualities, economy; "Save the surface and you save all"; durability, resistance to weather and wear; sanitation; appropriateness and economy of various finishes; money-saving value of outdoor painting; preparation of surfaces for various finishes.

Application of oil, linseed oil, stains, paint, varnishes.

5.—Working with Fabrics.

Making curtains, cushions; mending stockings and mitts; making aprons.

Rugmaking on the frame; how to use old rags; designing of simple patterns; preparing wool—washing, carding, spinning, weaving.

6.—Harness Repairs.

Rope splicing, tying various knots; care of harness; sewing and riveting harness parts.

7.—Upkeep of Farm Machinery.

Oiling and greasing; keeping rigid parts tightened; preparing machinery for the winter or other periods of idleness; the importance of replacing worn parts at once. Study of the construction of farm machinery and principles applied in its use; gas engines, cars, tractors.

8.—Electrical Work.

Exposed knob wiring from the 110-volt alternating current line; simple splices; how to protect wires around the farm-yard from moisture; replacing the cord on stand lamps, table lamps, toasters, washing machines, cream separators, and electric flat-irons; precautions; fuses and their use.

9.—Wickerwork.

Curing native willow for wickerwork; splint or bark weaving or plaiting; making baskets for the hens, for the washing, for gathering potatoes or vegetables. Decorative wickerwork for the home.

GRADE VIII.

DRAFTING (Required of all students. Time allotment—20 hours).

Representation of simple common objects by plan, elevation and section to any simple scale—the measurements actually taken from the object.

Development of surfaces of common solids, particularly the cone, using by preference some project that may be worked out in the shop.

Isometric projection applied to simple models; e.g., wood joints, box, book-rack.

Special care will be taken with the printing and the making of numerals. Use Roman letters and Arabic numerals.

About four plates should be accomplished. One plate should be inked in with India ink.

WOODWORK (Time allotment—40 hours).

Continue the work of Grade VII.

Students who have not had woodwork in the previous grade may have to do some preliminary work before being entrusted with an elaborate model.

Wood finishing and decorating; use and care of tools; shop maintenance and care. Better students might be allowed to do work in hardwoods.

Square up material. Make various joints—mortise and tenon, lap, dowel, glued rebates—as required for models.

Suggested Projects.—Book-rack, tabouret, piano stool, fern stand, small table, costumier, framed bracket, book shelf, box, drawer, piece of square framing.

Spindle turning on lathe.

Suggested Projects.—Mallet, gavel, rolling pin, chisel handle, baseball bat, darning egg.

METAL (Time allotment—40 hours).

(Students may select either A or B.)

A.—Forging.

Building a forge fire and care of the forge; heating iron; tools and their use; in drawing out, bending, twisting, upsetting, riveting, cutting, welding.

Suggested Projects.—Hook, clevis, chain link, bolt, bracket piece, stove poker.

Students with special ability may proceed to more difficult projects.

Introduce steel working, annealing and hardening, tempering; tool care and sharpening; drilling; use of stocks and dies; use of drills, punches and forging tools; filing, finishing and polishing.

Suggested Projects.—Lamp brackets, shoe scrapers, hanging baskets, camp-fire stands, camp cooking standards, punches, chisels, drills, bolts and nuts, spanners.

B.—Sheet Metal.

Continue the work of Grade VII.

Riveting and seaming; turning for wire edge; folding; forming; burring; cutting out and fixing bottoms, handles; soldering and fastening.

Suggested Projects.—Funnel, scoop, shovel, dust-pan, letter box, lamp shade, waste-paper basket, kettle, tea-pot.

Cutting, raising or etching and annealing sheet copper, brass or iron. Simple ornamentation.

Planishing, beating down, fluting and modelling, piercing, punching.

Suggested Projects.—Ashtray, pin tray, small bowl, baggage tag, house number, locker number, key escutcheon, paper knife, watch fob, name plate, lamp shades, fancy paper knife, fancy handles.

PLASTIC MATERIALS AND MODELLING (Time allotment—40 hours).

Continue the work of Grade VII, taking more advanced models.

More intensive study of concrete, Portland cement, sand, gravel, water, tests, proportions, mixing, placing. Forms, their construction; simple reinforcing; setting; Finishing; coloring and decorating. Making plaster and stucco.

Suggested Projects—as in Grade VII. Garden pedestal, walks, side-walk, garden bench, fence post, ornamental vessels, sun dial.

Reference Book.

A Practice Course in Concrete; Portland Cement Association. Canada Cement Company.

Plaster of Paris—casts from models; decoration.

Suggested Projects.—Cast of hand, arm, or foot; coat of arms, inscriptions and lettering, lamp pedestals; piecing separate molds into a unity.

Papier mâché, gesso, clay, new plastic media; shaping alabaster, soapstone, or soap.

LEATHER (Time allotment—40 hours).

Continue the work begun in Grade VII assigning models of a more advanced type according to the ability of the student.

If facilities permit, projects involving the making of gloves, mittens and moccasins from prepared skins, of gauntlets, slippers and even shoes, and shoe re-pairing may be begun. The repair of harness parts for dog harness or harness for horses makes an interesting and valuable project.

Designing and decorating leather—staining, burning, stitching, modelling, tooling.

Suggested Projects.—Whisk-broom holders, tie racks, pipe racks, calendar mounts.

Making wax-ends—fastening, needles, single and double stitching, using the awl, patching.

Suggested Projects.—Plumbers' bags, dog harness, camera cases, instrument cases, fancy book-covers, more elaborate purses.

PRINTING (Time allotment—40 hours).

Continue the work of Grade VII, introducing more advanced and difficult exercises in type indentions, tabulations, panel work and reprints. Practice in setting up of type forms from manuscript copy; the taking of a galley proof; proof-reading, making corrections; handling of type; composing stick to galley and tie-up; removal from galley to composing stone and vice versa; distribution of type; press lock-up, operation of press; press feeding.

BENT IRON OR VENETIAN WORK (Time allotment—40 hours).

This course follows the wirework, as many of the tools and several of the manipulative exercises are the same, the difference being in the medium used. The material required is strip iron—narrow ribbons of iron that can be latticed, twisted, riveted, collared and spot-welded to form many beautiful and useful articles. The iron should be from 1/48th to 1/64th of an inch thick and from 1/8 to 3/8 of an inch wide. The material may be bought ready for use in coils of about 50 ft.; but it may be cut from sheets. A certain amount of thin sheet copper and brass may be required, and the collar bands may be cut from old tin cans or copper or brass tubing.

Exercises involving the making of curves, C & S & O, volutes and spirals, waves, chains and suspenders, twists and crossed strips or lattice work.

Suggested Projects.—Candle holder, bracket, flower vase holder, picture frame, small easel for displaying show cards. Latticed frames with boss or rosette decorations. Miniature gates, standard lamp, lanterns, letter racks, pipe racks, electric light fixtures—as table lamps, brackets, sconces; cake stand, mirror mounts.

ELECTRICITY (Time allotment—40 hours).

Generation of electricity. Dry cells and their use. Storage batteries. Testing; 2-volt batteries; 6-volt batteries.

Suggested Projects.—Charging batteries by rectified alternating current from the 110-volt line or by a wind-driven or motor-driven generator. Construct a simple bell circuit. Connect one push button to ring two bells in parallel. Connect one push button to ring two bells in series. Connect two push buttons in parallel to ring two bells in parallel. Connect three-wire return-call bell system. Connect a local fire alarm using three bells and three push buttons. Sketch bell circuits. Using the voltmeter and ammeter, test bell circuits.

Electric Heating. Construction of step-down transformers for a low voltage in the heating circuit. Use of tables showing gauges of wire required for various cross-sections of the core and number of turns. Explanation of ratio of transformation.

Suggested Projects.—Electric etcher, electric carbon-contact heater for soldering irons, electric-arc soldering outfit, or other useful device.

Electric Lighting. Housewiring in accordance with the most important regulations; leading wires through studs and joists, ceiling drops, switches, wall-outlets. Making and soldering simple joints like the "pigtail", the "western union"; the "underwriters' knot" for exposed knob wiring. How to instal a knife-switch. Reading plans for wiring a small house.

Suggested Projects.—Wiring a model partition; wiring a model school stage; wiring for, and connecting motors.

Electromagnetic Pull. Construction of electro-magnets. Use of tables showing cross-sectional area, lbs. pull, gauge of wire, turns per square inch.

Suggested Projects.—Magnetic door latch, electro-magnetic circuit breaker, electric bell.

Electric Motor. Rewinding a simple field in a motor. Construction of toy motor. Explanation of torque.

Suggested Projects.—Toy motor driving toys, or driving movable display Building a motor-generator unit for charging batteries.

Radio. Construction of a simple receiving set from manufactured parts. Explanation of the functions of the receiving set; reception, selection, detection, audition, amplification.

Suggested Projects.—Antenna with lead-in soldered to it, slider tuning coil, variable condenser for tuning in; wiring of a manufactured vacuum tube for various purposes, as amplification or detection. Assembly of these projects to make a set.

GRADE IX.

DRAFTING.

In the case of those who have not had previous experience in drafting a quick review of the elements of the work outlined in Grades VII and VIII should be taken. At least *two* plates should be made, involving the fundamental principles

covered in these grades, before proceeding with the work of this grade. Other students should proceed to more advanced problems.

For practical shop projects, complete drawings should be made from actual measurements by use of a convenient scale. Make *one* drawing in orthographic projection, *one* in cabinet projection or isometric, *one* in the development of surfaces. These drawings should be done in careful detail, special attention being given to neatness, lettering and accuracy of measurements. Each should be inked in.

WOODWORK.

Projects.

These may be selected from any of the following, which are not prescriptive but suggestive as types:

Box type—bird house, shoe-polish box, small tool-box.

Stool type—footstool, verandah stool, saw house.

Frame type—picture frame, tea tray.

Shelf type—bracket shelf, book shelves.

Cylindrical type—mallet, darning egg, baseball bat.

Only one project should be taken from each type. The number of projects done will depend upon the time available and the desire and ability of the student. Projects of a similar type but more complex may be taken by those who have had previous experience.

A dimensioned sketch must be made for each project before the project is attempted. One drawing at least, should be finished, showing the details in accordance with accepted standards in mechanical drafting.

In the class discussions the following topics should be covered:

Design—General form and proportions; fitness for the purpose the project is planned to serve.

Tools—Name and function of each tool used and of its component parts; sharpening and care of tools.

Joints—How to make and use glued, halved, housed, mitred and rebated joints.

Wood—Growth and structure of trees; manufacture of lumber and lumber products; general characteristics of types of lumber in common use; seasoning.

Finishes—How to use paint, stain, shellac, varnish, wax.

In rural schools where facilities permit, interesting variations may be made in the projects selected. Local woods, such as spruce, poplar, willow or birch, may be secured and seasoned, and manufactured into useful articles. Willow roots or juniper roots may be used by utilizing natural forms, shaping them into ornamental figures, or making from them useful articles, carving them, polishing them or decorating them in suitable ways.

Home conditions of the pupils are important to keep in mind that articles of direct use may be made. In some localities willow reeds may be available to make wicker work into furniture, the seats of chairs, baskets, etc.

Textbook:

Woodwork for Junior High Schools, by Alexander S. Hamilton.

METAL WORK.

Metal has become so common a medium in modern life in providing material, tools, utensils, and machines for man's use that its inclusion in a manual arts course has become an essential. Metal-working hand tools are not so expensive or so elaborate as hand wood-working tools. The range of projects in metal is materially less than in wood, for, to manipulate metal into its various useful forms requires elaborate and expensive machinery beyond the range of the school. There are, however, many fundamental operations that may be performed and there are many interesting projects that may be selected. The field divides itself naturally into three divisions: *cold-metal* working using hand tools and machines for shaping purposes; *hot-metal* working, such as casting and forging; and *sheet-metal* and its manipulation.

Interesting machines for metal working are made for use in schools. These are reasonable in price and within the range of possibility for installation in small schools. They are durable and economical to operate. They may be driven by electricity taken from the ordinary light circuit; by gasoline motors made for this purpose; or by foot treadles of efficient types. The use of power, under supervision, by boys, is justified by the experience boys have in operating and maintaining motor cars, tractors, farm motors and many other types of modern power machinery. Machines under power, however, must be kept subordinate to hand exercises. The inherent interest in the machine tends to minimize the use of hand tools. This needs to be watched, and it is of fundamental importance that hand manipulation be given major attention.

Suggested Projects.

A.—*Benchwork.*

Use of hand tools in the operation of sawing, cutting with chisels, filing, chipping, drilling, countersinking, riveting; making calipers, try-square, gauge, bench top, hammer head, punch, machine bolt, etc. The use of taps and dies.

A power grinder, a small drill press, a hand shaper, or even a small metal lathe would greatly increase the scope of the work that might be done, and materially add to its interest.

Creative projects should be encouraged, particularly those which the pupil may put to a directly useful purpose.

B.—*Sheet-metal.*

The manipulation of soldering furnace or heating device used; safety precautions; the soldering coppers; their preparation, care and use; the soldering flux; solder and its composition; trimming and tinning flux; the proper heats for various purposes. Exercises in soldering a lap joint in (1) tinplate, (2) galvanized iron, (3) black iron. Care should be taken in the mechanical and chemical cleaning of the metal and in the removal of oxides.

Rectangular tray, rectangular match box, pin tray, bake tin.

C.—*Forging and Casting.*

Simple forging principles from the following: cutting, bending, drawing, checking, twisting, riveting, and simple welding; an eyebolt, staple, foot scraper, bracket, S-hook, ice tong, and a faggot weld.

Where a sufficiently high temperature may be obtained, interesting and instructive exercises may be worked out involving the casting of metal; making book-ends, name plates, ornaments; using lead, solder, babbitt, aluminium or copper.

ART METALWORK.

Repoussé Work—Peircing, Chasing and Etching, etc.

Art metalwork has an appeal to many students artistically inclined. It embraces the use of such metals as iron, copper, brass, pewter, aluminum, silver and nickel-silver, in sheet, strip or wire form. These metals are easily worked, and in them many artistic designs may be executed. They may be shaped by hammering, bending, twisting, piercing, etc., and decorated by raising, engraving or chasing, etching, coloring. Their surfaces may be treated with enamels or lacquers. Various combinations may be devised by lapping, soldering, riveting, stapling, etc. Many interesting and useful models, which give great satisfaction to the student, are easily made.

Suggested Projects.

Small plaques or designs for book covers or box tops, blotters, paper knives, thermometer frames or photo mounts, finger or door plates, ornamental door catches, small circular bon-bon dishes, crumb trays and brushes, barometer mounts, mantel clock mountings, candle holders, bracelets.

In etched work the design and projects are innumerable, including watch fobs, bag tags, shields, name plates, clock mounts, desk sets.

In pierced work (which may be etched also and worked in relief) the projects could include hinges, pulls, escutcheon plates, belt buckles, bag ornaments, sugar spoons, tea strainers, box corners.

Special mounts, hinges, etc., required in the Woodwork or Cabinet Work, can be readily made to suit the period, style or design. These frequently cannot be bought.

ELECTRICITY.

Electricity has come into such universal use that it is essential that opportunity be given students to know something about the generation, distribution and use of electric power. Naturally at this stage, the treatment should be elementary, but it should be practical. There are many projects that come within the range of ability of junior pupils, and demonstrate useful and elementary principles.

Suggested Projects.

Generating static electricity; demonstrations with pith balls, electroscope, amber and hard rubber rods. Make Leyden jar. Magnetism. Make a compass needle. Exercises with bar or horse-shoe magnets, iron filings, magnetic compass and dry cells. Draw sketches of the magnetic fields observed. Make a "western union" and common tee-splice. Construct a small horse-shoe electromagnet. Make a simple motor, using the electromagnet. Construct a simple bichromate cell or a simple acid cell. Connect dry cells in series, parallel, and series-parallel, and measure voltages in each case. Construct a simple heater unit; such as toaster or simple stove. Exercises with different kinds of resistance wire in the form of circuits which will include a voltmeter and ammeter.

AUTOMOTIVES (Motor Mechanics).

For the interpretation of this course one or two used cars in fair running condition should be available. Models having engine, clutch and gear-box assembled as one unit are not recommended.

The students should remove the bodies, fenders, aprons and running boards from the cars supplied for practice work. These "dead" parts are of little value educationally, and they interfere with the work on the mechanical units. Mount the chassis on four strong sawhorses, placed underneath the springs and ahead of the rear axle, so that the front and rear axles may be removed when required.

The complete chassis provides better instructional material than separate units. The chassis should *not* be dismantled into a number of separate units. Of course, at different times during the school year, the chassis may become divided into the separate units, but at the beginning, at the end, and a few times during the term, they should be found completely assembled.

Special effort should be made at certain intervals during the term to bring the units together as a complete chassis, and to run each one under its own power on the sawhorses. The making of engines to run again after having been dismantled into a number of inanimate parts, and again assembled, has a powerful appeal to boys' interest. "Live" engines are the life-blood of any motor mechanics course.

In order to acquaint the student with the fundamental principles behind automobile construction, maintenance and repair, the following units of the automobile should be covered: the multi-cylinder, four-cycle gasoline engine and its auxiliaries—lubricating, cooling, and fuel systems; gear-box, including purpose of the clutch; rear axle; front axle, and steering gear.

The pupil should know the name of unit, and technical names of its important parts; location, simple operation, and general purpose of each essential unit.

Any necessary theory covering units may be given in short shop talks, taking from five to fifteen minutes each day.

The number of boys to be employed per chassis can be calculated as follows. If first year classes are confined to mechanical units, leaving electrical units for second year classes, then at one time the following groups could be working: two boys on front axle, two boys on rear axle, two boys on gear-box, two boys on engine block, two boys on steering gear. This makes a total of ten boys per chassis. Some congestion may result at the beginning of the term if all these boys endeavor to remove their particular units from one chassis at the same time. However, they will gradually reduce in number as their particular units are removed to different parts of the shop. During the term the congestion should not be troublesome as the groups will be at different stages.

Since a class for one instructor in a small centre might be set at twelve students, it will be seen that no difficulty should arise in providing jobs when *two* chassis are made available by the school district. Smaller classes would require only one. Where two chassis are provided they should be of different makes so as to give additional experiences, especially to the brighter students.

At the end of the course the students should have a general knowledge of the modern automobile with the exception of the electric system.

FARM MECHANICS.

The aim of Farm Mechanics is to develop resourcefulness in the construction, the upkeep, and the repair of farm conveniences with tools and materials that are available on the average farm. *An instructor may choose a minimum of three phases from the following list, one of which must be woodwork.* Projects may be selected from the suggested lists.

1.—Woodwork (Outdoor conveniences).

Study of plans for the farmer, supplied by the Department of Agriculture.

Suggested Projects.—Building toilet house, chicken coop, chicken house, hog house, granary, garage, machine shed. (Most of these buildings could be built on skids and delivered when the work has been finished in the school yard. Local farmers might supply lumber and use the finished product.) Making stock loaders, hand cultivators and row makers for the garden.

2.—Woodwork (Indoor conveniences).

Suggested Projects.—Building step-ladders, built-in cupboards, wardrobes, ironing cabinets, kitchen stools, flower-stands.

3.—Blacksmithing.

Suggested Projects.—Making hooks, chains, clevises, gate hinges.

4.—Cement Work.

Suggested Projects.—Building wooden forms. Strengthening concrete with wire and rod. Strengthening forms by wires and cleats. Building watering troughs, well casings, gullies for stable, barn or toilet. Smoothing and decorating a concrete surface.

5.—Painting.

The durability, resistance to weather and wear, sanitation, appropriateness and economy of various finishes. The money saving value of outdoor painting. Preparation for various finishes.

Suggested Exercises.—Application of paint, stain, varnish, calcimine. Patterns for sponge calcimining. Floor refinishing by staining, graining and varnishing.

6.—Harness Repairs.

Suggested Projects.—Sewing and riveting harness parts. Making bridles. Splicing leather lines, saddle straps.

7.—Upkeep of Farm Machinery.

Small repairs on binder, separator, plow, seeder, harrow. Study of the construction of heavy farm machinery. How to secure best draft from a team of horses.

8.—Wickerwork.

Curing native willow for wickerwork.

Applying wickerwork to wooden frames: chairs, small tables, flower-stands, verandah and garden furniture.

LEATHERCRAFT.

Leather lends itself admirably to the creation of beautiful designs. It also provides a natural, desirable avocational activity which will be serviceable to students in their leisure time.

Practical talks connected with demonstrations should include such topics as hides, tanning, coloring, putting out, drying, finishing, staking, seasoning, graining, embossing, glazing, splitting; other materials used, such as linings, lacings, snap fasteners, buttons, buckles.

Suggested Projects.—Key containers, coin purses, belts, billfolds, pouches, picture frames, book-ends, stationery cases, card sets, under-arm bags, hand bags, photo albums.

CONCRETE.

The use of concrete has become so universal, and its significance in modern life has become so great as a material of construction, that it should find a place in a practical programme in General Shop. The materials are readily available and reasonable in cost in the majority of places; and interesting and useful articles can be made from them. Concrete work is therefore an excellent subject for shop experience. Simple tools are required. The work will have to be done outside the regular shop, but this can usually be arranged for in a shed or on a platform out of doors during the months free from frost. It readily correlates itself with the woodshop and woodworking tools.

Suggested Projects.—Concrete slabs 12"×12" for a side walk; a home plate on a baseball diamond; book ends; water basin for chickens, dogs, birds; hog troughs; fence posts; garden ornaments.

PRINTING.

This Grade IX unit will be confined to those schools where there is access to a fairly complete printing equipment.

The Elements of Composition.

Principles of typesetting: learning the case; using the composing stick; justification; spacing; setting various measures.

Proving composition: tying up; taking planer proof; marking proof errors; correcting errors; using proof presses.

Distribution: cleaning and caring for type; distributing type; caring for materials.

Style aids in composition: caps. and small caps.; punctuation—period and comma; using italics; representing number; division of words; indention.

Composition involving calculation: the point system; leader and figure work; multiple justification.

Platen Press.

Platen press feeding: getting acquainted with the press; oiling and cleaning; feeding blank stock; feeding live jobs; washing the press.

Stone Work.

Elements of lock-up; lock-up equipment; principles of lock-up; making proofs and corrections; locking up small forms; locking up rule forms.

Display Composition.

Principles of display: interpreting the copy; contrast harmony; proportion; balance; spacing.

Applications.

Drawing of case and inserting letters and characters in boxes; setting reprint copy; setting manuscript copy; history outlines or geography outlines; lesson sheets; taking proofs and proofreading; correcting galleys; distributing straight matter; recipes for cooking class; school reports; correspondence; announcements, circulars, school paper, advertising for school social and athletic events; school printing of all kinds.

HOME ECONOMICS

Home Economics as a subject of study in the Intermediate School is justified in the light of modern research in education. It aims to educate by directing the mind of the child to ideas connected with the home, and by giving knowledge and experiences of a useful nature related to home duties. Although it may be classed as a manual subject of a practical nature, it has high value in mental training.

No subject on the curriculum has greater possibilities for correlation than has Home Economics. Interests in a class study can be directed to a library where additional stories on interesting topics raised in the lessons may be secured. Calculations of qualities and values afford opportunities for tying the work in with Arithmetic. The artistic sense finds an outlet in the exercises of the kitchen or of the sewing room. Home Economics can be made a gathering ground for working over and vitalizing much useful information gleaned in the other classes of the school, particularly in Social Studies and in Science.

Elaborate equipment is not essential. If a sewing machine, a table, a cooking stove with an oven and some utensils are available, good work may be done under a competent teacher. Care should be taken to give a maximum amount of manipulative experience and not to spend too much time in discussion without work. Special care should be taken not to make the subject a lecture course or a book-study procedure. While a certain amount of book knowledge may be necessary, the most important aspect of this work is found in the doing of things.

This programme is built upon a 36-week-year plan. In Grade VII it is recommended that the afternoon period be used where possible, the morning half-day being given to Grade VIII. The Grade VII programme is planned for 2½ hours per week, and the Grade VIII programme for 3 hours per week. It is not necessary in these classes to make allowance for recess time. The work of the class allows such a variety of class activity that the release of the class for free play is really not necessary.

The following is an analysis of the courses with a suggested allotment of time:

GRADE VII.		GRADE VIII.		GRADE IX.	
	Weeks		Weeks		Weeks
Sewing	16	Sewing	16	Clothing & Textiles.....	14
Foods	16	Foods	16	Foods	14
Laundry	4	Social and Family Relationships	4	Social and Family Relationships	4
				Home Management ...	4

This schedule does not mean that the topics are to be treated in the order given; it refers only to the approximate time allotment for each. The teacher may arrange to discuss the problems of Social and Family Relationships incidentally, as convenience or other factors may determine.

In some schools it may be *necessary to combine grades* in order to get a class large enough to use the teacher's time economically. The course lends itself to this arrangement. When grades are combined, the teacher should select carefully the projects of greatest interest and value to the students.

There are *no minimum requirements* for shop projects. The weaker students may not achieve so much as the more capable, but they may, however, make greater relative progress. All students should be employed to the maximum of their capabilities. The abler students may act as tutors. Such tuition will help the student who gives it as well as the one who receives it.

The teacher will be the judge respecting the type of assignment that each student should take. Assignments are to be graded, not only with reference to the achievement of the student, but also to his capacity. The teacher must therefore accept a considerable burden of responsibility, but by so doing he will have greater freedom in developing the individuality of the pupil.

A carefully kept *note book is essential* for each pupil, but care must be taken to avoid too much stress on mere taking notes. This book should contain the recipes and dictated or printed material given the pupils from time to time. Samples of work in textiles, color schemes, picture, clippings, are properly included. This book should be available for the inspector, who will give it major attention in evaluating the work of the pupil and of the class during the year.

A daily record, or log, should be kept in a separate section of the note-book.

The school should provide a reference library that is readily accessible to all the students. Frequent assignments should be made, calling for the use of this library. A bibliography of suitable books is given below.

TEXTBOOK FOR PUPILS

British Columbia Manual of Foods, Nutrition and Home Management.

N.B.—A *Manual of Family Sewing Machines*, together with a set of illustrative charts, will be furnished free to schools by the Singer Sewing Machine Co.

REFERENCE BOOKS FOR TEACHERS

Home Makings: An Integrated Teaching Programme—Herrington (Appleton-Century).

Textile Fabrics—Dyer (Houghton-Mifflin).

Feeding the Family—Rose (Macmillan).

Your Home and Family—Graves and Ott (Little Brown and Company).

Healthful Living—Williams (Macmillan).

BOOKS FOR THE CLASSROOM LIBRARY

Fundamentals of Home Economics—Jensen, Ziller and Jensen (Macmillan).

A Girl's Problems in Home Economics—Trilling and Williams.

Elementary Home Economics—Matthews (Little, Brown and Company).

Junior Home Economics Units—Friend and Snultz (Appleton).

Junior Home Economics—Dean and Middleton (Ryerson).

The Girl Today, The Woman Tomorrow—Hunter (Allyn and Bacon).

Everyday Manners (Macmillan).

Good Neighbors—Haveland (Lippincott).

Home and Family—Jordan, Ziller and Brown (Macmillan).

Junior Home Problems—Kenyon and Hopkins (Benj. H. Sanborn).

Foods and Home Making—Greer (Allyn and Bacon).

Nutrition for Boys and Girls—Rose (Macmillan).

The Canadian Cook Book—Pattinson (Ryerson).

Meal Planning and Service—Bailey (Manual Arts Press).

Breakfasts, Luncheons and Dinners—Chambers (Boston Cooking School Magazine Company).

Table Setting and Service—Lutes (Barrows and Company).

Clothing for the High School Girl (Baldt and Harkness).

Practical Sewing—Everson (Ryerson).

From Thimble to Gown—Van Gelder (Allyn and Bacon).

The Mode in Home and Dress.

Sewing Book—Hyde (Century).

Design—Bush and Helbourne (Little, Brown and Company).

FREE PAMPHLETS

Foods Tested, Tested and Approved—Good Housekeeping Institute.

Nutrition and Health—The Borden Company.

Principles of Clothing Selection—Butterdick.

Foot Health—Metropolitan Life Insurance.

Health Heroes Series—Metropolitan Life Insurance.

Questions and Answers on Canning—Kerr Canning Company.

On the Art of Being Charming—Proctor and Gamble.

Quaker Oats Cook Book.

Sewing Book for Girls' Clubs—Dominion Department of Agriculture.

Soap in Everyday Life—Colgate-Palmolive-Peet.

The Story of Crisco—Proctor and Gamble.

Better Buymanship—Household Finance Corporation, Chicago.

GRADE VII.

The course has been planned for work in clothing and laundry during the first half-year, and in foods and household management during the second half.

Objectives.

To develop skill in the use of tools and the use of materials.

To give acquaintance with the use of the sewing machine.

To give instruction in choosing textiles wisely.

To stimulate the interest of girls in making their own clothes, and caring for them properly.

To develop sound food habits, and to provoke thought about the important relation of food to health.

To teach fundamental cooking principles.

To help girls understand what constitutes a sanitary convenient kitchen, and how work should be organized to save time and strength.

SEWING.

The sewing in Grade VII is based on the need of the girl for a cooking uniform in the latter part of her year's work.

The Sewing Machine.

Proper way to sit; threading; managing treadle to avoid breaking thread; starting position of needle and presser foot; removal of material; turning corners. Exercise of proper care in opening and closing the machine. Reason for leaving piece of material under presser foot.

Textiles.

Study of cotton and linen to include—source, countries producing and characteristics. This work should consist of talks by the teacher, discussions by pupils, use of illustrative material and brief, simple notes.

Names and prices of standard materials, as unbleached cotton, print, broadcloth, gingham, Holland linen and damask.

Suggested Projects.

Envelope bag for carrying apron and notebook.

Material used—Holland linen, width about 35 inches. One width $\frac{3}{4}$ -yard long makes 2 bags. Finished bag is approximately 10"×14".

Pot holder—knitted, crocheted, or cloth.

Apron.—Style to conform to present vogue. Simple butcher's apron recommended when time is limited.

Problems involved: computing amounts of material required; use of pattern in cutting (attention to grain of material in folding and straightening the ends); seams (French or felled), hem, bias facing or binding, as required by style of apron; pocket; button and button-hole, or ties, as required by style of apron.

Cap—a simple bandeau.

Simple hand towel—(If the teacher desires it as part of the equipment).

Articles made should necessitate the use of the following:

Basting, hemming by hand and machine, overhanding; French and flat felled seams; cutting and joining bias; bias facing and binding; embroidery stitches suitable for bag; sewing on fasteners.

LAUNDRY.

The work in laundering should be carried out in conjunction with the sewing and foods. Short periods at frequent intervals should be arranged.

Washing of white clothes, airing, folding; laundering of apron and cap.

Washing of colored clothes; ironing of embroidery; practical application—laundering of uniform bags.

Removal of stains that might be found in a breakfast cloth and serviettes, apron. Laundering breakfast cloth and serviettes.

FOODS.

The work in this grade should involve the fundamentals of food preparation and nutrition leading up to planning, preparing and serving a breakfast. Stress daily essentials of an adequate *balanced* diet. Nutrition in relation to health may be correlated with Health Education.

Beverages.

Theory—Sources of common beverages; e.g., tea, coffee, cocoa; stimulating effects; food value.

Practice—Demonstration of the making of tea and coffee; class practice in making cocoa.

Cereals.

Theory—Importance in daily diet; kinds; relative costs of bulk and package cereals. Importance of using home-grown cereals.

Practice—Preparation of at least one fine and one coarse cereal. *Stress the use of whole-grain cereals.*

Fruits.

Theory.—Common kinds; selection and cost; food value and place in diet.

Practice—Preparation of fresh fruits, fruit sauces, stewed fruits and dried fruits.

Eggs.

Soft and hard-cooked, poached eggs, omelet.

Breakfast breads.

Theory—Brief study of flours—bread, pastry, Graham, wholewheat and cornmeal; leavening agents; oven temperatures and regulation.

Practice—Toast, French toast; muffins—plain, cornmeal, graham or whole wheat, and bran. Various types of fruits may be introduced. Tea biscuits—plain, emergency, pin-wheel.

Breakfast meats: bacon, sausage.

Planning, preparing and serving types of *family breakfast* suited to different incomes, ages and occupations.

Social and Family Relationships.

Everyday courtesies: in the home and at school, in stores and public places, as hostess and as guest; greetings.

TESTS

It is desirable to give short, practical tests on all phases of the year's work. For practical tests in foods, pupils should know methods, but should be given ingredients and amounts.

Three or more short written tests should be given during the term.

Cleaning methods for the following should be incorporated in class lessons in a natural setting:—

Sinks, stove, refrigerator, garbage container; cupboards, bread-box, drawers and woodwork; floors and dusting; cleaning of metals—silver, aluminum, nickel, steel and brass; polishing of glass; care of dish towels.

GRADE VIII.

Objectives.

To provide further knowledge of sewing, and to encourage a liking for sewing.

To develop further skill in the use of the sewing machine.

To enable students to improve their personal appearance at a moderate cost.

To impart a practical knowledge of fabrics as an aid to the intelligent buying of clothing and clothing material.

To give instruction in the care and repair of clothing with regard to health and economy.

To foster an appreciation of the principles of line, design and color.

To develop further skill in preparing food, and in planning and serving meals.

To provide such further knowledge of the facts of nutrition as is necessary for health.

To cultivate habits of cleanliness and sanitation in daily living.

To inculcate sound principles of family budgeting.

Social and Family Relationships.

The Grade VIII girl's new-found interest in herself as an individual is the focal centre for all of the problems in foods, nutrition and clothing that make up the Grade VIII programme in Home Economics.

The Ideal Girl.

Health and appearance—Nutrition, sleep, exercise, air, posture, cleanliness of person and clothing; suitability of clothing; care of clothing; grooming—hair, skin, nails (practical work in shampooing, manicuring, preparation of hand lotions, etc.).

Personality—Development of desirable traits; making and keeping friends; poise and ease; habitual good manners as opposed to "company" manners.

FOODS.

Preservation of Food.

Theory—Brief, concise study of bacteria, yeasts and moulds; causes of food spoilage; reasons for food preservation; methods of food preservation.

Practice—Canning of fruits by cold-pack and open-kettle method.

Vegetables.

Theory—Place of vegetables in diet; formation of daily habit of eating at least one fresh green vegetable.

Practice—Cooking of at least one vegetable of each class; potatoes, cooked in several ways; making of a quick, mild, vegetable pickle, e.g., beet and cabbage, cucumber salad, pepper relish.

Milk.

Theory—Composition; value in diet; importance of cleanliness in handling; sterilization, pasteurization and adulteration; particular importance in diet of children; milk products.

Bread.

Theory—Study of yeast as a leavening agent; experiments with yeast; effects of heat, cold, and warmth upon it; study of gluten.

Practice—Graham or white bread. Rolls may be made if time permits.

Sugar.

Theory—Sources; use in body; abuse of body by use of excess sugar; stages in cooking sugar syrups.

Practice—Four kinds of candy, illustrating four stages in cooking of sugar syrups; e.g., maple cream, divinity fudge, molasses taffy, and peanut brittle.

Desserts.

Custards, milk puddings, fruit desserts, cake and cookies.

Luncheon and Supper Dishes.

Soup, salads, cheese dishes, egg dishes.

Meal Planning.

Theory—Balancing, cost, marketing methods to save both time and money.

Home exercises in menu making should be given.

Stress should be put on menus for children of various ages.

Proper form in writing menus.

Practice—Practice should be given in serving low cost family meals as follows:

Breakfast—consisting of fruit, cereal, bread stuff, protein dish and beverage.

(Review.)

Luncheons or suppers for families of various ages, incomes, and activities.

A tea for mothers and other guests might be given by students of this grade in co-operation with students of Grades VII and IX, with a display of work or a fashion show.

SEWING.

Use and Care of the Sewing Machine.

Review of use as laid down in Grade VII course; winding bobbin, placing bobbin, placing plate, placing needle.

Care after using; cleaning and oiling.

Textiles.—Review and continue study of cotton and linen in connection with materials used in practical work.

Suggested Projects and Practical Work.

The practical work in sewing in Grade VIII is planned to arouse the student's interest through her own personal clothing needs. A hand project is included to increase manipulative skill.

Towel, or runner, bag, or cushion, made from linen, huck-a-back or colored linen to show hemstitched or scalloped hems, and decorative stitches such as darning, cross stitch, and satin stitch.

Slip, step-ins, or equivalent.

Collar and cuff set, or vestee, if in vogue. (To be selected with dress in view and cut from drafted or commercial pattern.)

Summer or sports dress, or blouse.

Selection of materials: kinds suitable; pattern of cloth—plain or figured; computing of amount, consideration of trimming; becomingness of color; ease in laundering.

Pattern: becoming lines for various types of figure; markings, testing, altering; economical placing and cutting.

Construction: pinning, basting and fitting; appropriate seams; finishes; judging; comparing with ready-made as to design, material, construction, style, cost.

GRADE IX.

Clothing of the Intermediate School Girl.

Discussion Periods.

Factors making for good appearance: grooming; health habits in relation to appearance—bathing, care of the skin, care of the hair and scalp, care of the hands, posture, sleep and rest; food habits.

Sewing Equipment.

Individual; class.

Sewing Machines.

Types; parts with their uses; threading; regulation, tension and stitch; care—oiling, cleaning, setting needle.

Conservation of Clothing.

Reasons for conservation; ways to conserve; renovation—washing or cleaning; remodelling—ripping, washing or dry-cleaning, dyeing, pressing, repairing; laundering—cotton and linen, silk, wool, rayon; removal of stains.

Intelligent Shopping.

Definite plan; sales—advantages and disadvantages; shopping ethics.

Costume Design.

Application of the principles of line, proportion, color, etc., to all articles of clothing. This section should be taught by the use of a great deal of illustrative material; accessories in relation to dress.

Garment Construction.

Kinds of commercial patterns; study of symbols of at least three commercial patterns; suitability of pattern to material, occasion, and season; choice of material—consideration of quality and cost, suitability, amount needed. Construction—study of pattern; testing and altering where necessary (alterations for length and width of all parts of garment to be thoroughly understood); placing pattern—economically, with grain of material, pinning, marking, cutting. Construction—pinning, basting, fitting, stitching, finishing seams, bias-cutting and joining, facings, binding, pockets, belts, hems, decorations.

Textiles.

Silk, wool and rayon fibres: source; physical characteristics—compare fibres; review spinning and weaving—common weaves, plain or tabby, basket, twill, satin, pile, leno or gauze; methods of dyeing and printing; finishing processes, e.g., bleaching, sizing, mercerizing; wearing qualities of cloth—influenced by: kind and quality of fibre, various types of spinning, weave, weight of material. Use of fabrics to illustrate these points. Study of number of staple cotton, linen and rayon materials suitable for the garments under construction.

Suggested Practical Work.

Child's dress or baby's rompers—cotton or linen; preferably remade from old garment or from a remnant. The object of this project is to test the skill of the incoming students, and to encourage thrift.

Underwear—a choice from the following: step-ins, pyjamas or night gown, slip.

Cotton is suggested for this project, but the teacher may allow the use of a firm silk, e.g., spun silk or a heavy quality rayon flat crepe.

Sports or afternoon dress of cotton, silk, linen, or rayon. (No girl who has not attained a standard set by the teacher shall be allowed to use rayon or silk for this project.) On the completion of each garment, comparisons should be made with ready-made garments as to cost, workmanship, styles.

The work of the year should include common seams—plain, French, flat fell; common hems—plain, curved, faced, French; sewing on lace by the French hem method; placket—bound and faced or bound slit; setting in sleeves; button holes and sewing on fasteners; darning and patching.

Social and Family Relationships. Social Customs and Courtesies.

Aims.

To show that good manners indicate a respect for oneself and for others, and that courtesy makes living more pleasant for oneself and for others.

To become familiar with the common social customs.

To meet unusual situations with ease.

To appreciate the duties and privileges of a visitor and hostess.

Content.

1. ORIGIN OF SOCIAL CUSTOMS: Respect for others necessary for happy family and community life; respect for elders; origin of hand shaking a sign of friendship; origin of dancing as an expression of happiness.

2. EVERY-DAY SOCIAL CUSTOMS: Introductions and greetings.

3. EVERY-DAY COURTESY: To Family.—Respect for parents; interest in and tolerance of young brothers and sisters; courtesy to older people; sharing pleasure and duties.

Table Etiquette.—Posture, handling of silver; eating habits; rising from the table.

Conduct in Public Places: on the streets; in stores—politeness to sales people; in public gatherings; in restaurants; when travelling.

Conduct and Manners at School: in corridors and Assembly Hall (orderliness, quietness); toward fellow students; at games; at school parties.

Conduct of boys and girls.—Frank discussion of good manners between boys and girls; proper conduct—in the classroom, on the street, at parties; keeping appointments.

HOME MANAGEMENT.

Food Budgeting and Marketing (to be incorporated with practical work).

Relationship between Food Value and Cost.—Use of foods in season; advantages of knowing brands of canned goods; bargain buying; use of cheaper cuts of meat; necessity of knowing food value with regard to substitution; value of contribution from garden (home canning and preserving), poultry, cow.

Care of Food in the Home.—Foods that need special attention—milk, meat, fresh vegetables, dried vegetables, canned fruits and vegetables, fresh fruits, bread and cake; temporary care by means of refrigeration, cellar, window box; storing staples—protection from dirt, protection from pests, protection from moisture.

Organization of work and budgeting of time in relation to daily work; weekly work; labor-saving devices; well-planned kitchen.

Care of kitchen and kitchen equipment to include the use of soaps, scourers, solvents, on different metals and woods.

FOODS AND COOKERY.

Discussion Periods.

Preservation of Foods.—Review bacteria, yeasts and moulds, discussing conditions favoring the preventing growth. (Some experimental work should be included.) Preservation by various methods—pickling, jellies, jams and marmalade; consideration of value and economy of various methods of preserving; comparing the products preserved at school with commercial products as to cost, appearance, flavor, etc.; brands, grades, sizes and prices of canned goods.

Health and Nutrition.

A general study of the characteristics of a healthy school girl. If time does not permit of weighing and measuring all students, types may be selected. Effect of health on general appearance; factors determining health and personal appearance—foods, rest, exercise, cleanliness, habits, disposition and clothing; daily habits which make for health; review of food principles and planning of meals in connection with the needs of a healthy body; food prejudices; essentials of the the balanced meal. (The work of Grade IX should be a recapitulation and

broadening of that done in Grades VII and VIII. Great care should be taken to vary and enlarge upon the practical work done in the junior grades.)

Review.—Meal planning; meal service. Discuss main types and try to illustrate usage in the serving of meals.

Satisfactory Meals.—Attractively served; variety in texture and flavor; sufficient fat to prolong digestion; sufficient bulk.

Calorific Value of Diet (brief treatment).—Comparative value of common foods; the effect of age, occupation, etc., upon the caloric requirements. Approximate the caloric value of some of the meals served in class and at home.

Protein Requirements.—Function of proteins; types of proteins; amount needed; economical sources.

Minerals.—Minerals required; best sources; functions; conservation by proper methods of cooking.

Vitamins.—Kinds, sources, functions, importance of raw food; results of lack of vitamins.

Constipation.—Common causes, corrective measures, importance of diet.

LABORATORY WORK.

Preserving.

Pickling with different methods of procedure in preparation. Note that where amount of vinegar and spices is not sufficient to insure preservation, the method of open-kettle canning is used.

Jelly-making, including pectin tests. Demonstrate use of commercial pectin.

Jam or marmalade.

Review luncheon work of Grade VIII.—Types of luncheons; factors affecting types of luncheons; planning, preparation and serving of two and three-course luncheons. Include a special-occasion luncheon.

Simple Dinner.—Use luncheon work as a foundation; review and extend meat cookery, including methods of making gravy.

Practical work should include preparation of vegetables, casserole and oven dishes; use of left-overs; salads; cream soups; meat and fish; desserts—milk, egg, cereal, fruit, and gelatin; luncheon breads—muffins, nut and date loaf, tea biscuits, etc.; cakes, cookies; plain pastry.

LR 1629-5. A3 A35 1937 GR-07-09
PROGRAMME OF STUDIES FOR THE
INTERMEDIATE SCHOOL GRADES VII
VIII AND IX AND DEPARTMENTAL
40029626 CURR HIST



* 000031287808 *

DATE DUE SLIP

[illegible]

